



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
WASHINGTON, DC 20380-0001

MCO 3501.8A
TE 31
19 Jun 91

MARINE CORPS ORDER 3501.8A

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (SHORT TITLE:
MCCRES); VOLUME VII, MARINE AIR-GROUND TASK FORCE (MAGTF) ELEMENTS

Ref: (a) MCO 3501.1B

Encl: (1) Volume VII - Mission Performance Standards (MPS's) for Marine
Air-Ground Task: Force (MAGTF) Elements

1. Purpose. To promulgate Volume VII of MCCRES for use in the training and evaluation of MAGTF elements per the reference.

2. Cancellation. MCO 3501.8.

3. Information. The reference establishes MCCRES for implementation within the Marine Corps. The enclosure, supported by the policies and procedures set forth in the reference, provides the MPS's for use in evaluation of the combat readiness of MAGTF elements.

4. Action. Commanders will:

a. Use the MPS's contained in the enclosure as guidelines for establishing training goals, training programs, and to prepare for formal readiness evaluations as directed by higher headquarters per the reference.

b. When appropriate, use the MPS's for informal evaluations, and/or as an inventory to determine an element's current training status and areas for future progressive training programs.

c. Make every effort to conduct evaluations when the unit participating in their appropriate role as part of a MAGTF. This method will strengthen integration efforts and give a more complete evaluation of realistic combat readiness.

MCO 3501.8A
19 Jun 91

5. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.

Paul K. Van Riper

PAUL K. VAN RIPER
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10203353500

Copy to: 7000110 (55)
8145005 (2)
7000144/8145001 (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
SECTION 7A - <u>MARINE EXPEDITIONARY UNIT</u>	
INTRODUCTION	VII-A-1
MPS 7A.1	VII-A-2
MEU COMMAND ELEMENT	
MPS 7A.2	VII-A-35
GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)	
MPS 7A.3	VII-A-57
AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)	
MPS 7A.4	VII-A-73
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)	
SECTION 7B - <u>MARINE EXPEDITIONARY BRIGADE</u>	
INTRODUCTION	VII-B-1
MPS 7B.1	VII-B-2
MEB COMMAND ELEMENT	
MPS 7B.2	VII-B-41
GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)	
MPS 7B.3	VII-B-68
AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)	
MPS 7B.4	VII-B-92
COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)	

VOLUME VII
MISSION PERFORMANCE STANDARDS
MAGTF ELEMENTS

INTRODUCTION:

This portion of the Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation System (MCCRES) contains Mission Performance Standards (MPS's) that evaluate planning, preparation, and execution of tactical tasks performed by the elements internal to the Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF); i.e., command element (CE), ground combat element (GCE), aviation combat element (ACE), and combat service support element (CSSE). The MAGTF command element provides centralized control and coordination of an operation as well as establishing liaison with senior and supporting staffs from other services. The following sections are contained in this volume:

- * Section 7A - MPS's for operations of a Marine Expeditionary Unit.
- * Section 7B - MPS's for operations of a Marine Expeditionary Brigade.

The total number of MPS's used and the sections from which they are chosen for use in an evaluation will be a functions of the exercise scenario and the amount of support available. The MPS's contained in this volume can be used in conjunction with MPS's contained in other MCCRES volumes, to permit thorough evaluation of different types of units involved in MAGTF operations.

Recommended changes to these standards should be submitted to the Commanding General, H&S Bn, TRNG and EDUC CTR, MCCDC (Code TE31M), Quantico, VA 22134-5010.

Submission should be in the following format:

- o Item to be changed (MPS, task requirement, or text location)
- o Comment
- o Recommendation

MCO 3501.8A
19 JUNE 91

SECTION 7A

MARINE EXPEDITIONARY UNIT

ENCLOSURE (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	VII-A-1
<u>MPS 7A.1 - MEU COMMAND ELEMENT</u>	
TASK 7A.1.1	VII-A-2
CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING	VII-A-5
TASK 7A.1.2	VII-A-7
DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	VII-A-7
TASK 7A.1.3	VII-A-7
PLAN INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION	VII-A-7
TASK 7A.1.4	VII-A-8
PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE	VII-A-8
TASK 7A.1.5	VII-A-9
PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	VII-A-9
TASK 7A.1.6	VII-A-9
DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE	VII-A-12
TASK 7A.1.7	VII-A-13
PLAN FIRE SUPPORT	VII-A-13
TASK 7A.1.8	VII-A-14
DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT	VII-A-14
TASK 7A.1.9	VII-A-15
CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION	VII-A-15
TASK 7A.1.10	VII-A-15
PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY	VII-A-15
TASK 7A.1.11	VII-A-15
ENSURE INTEROPERABILITY	VII-A-16
TASK 7A.1.12	VII-A-16
PLAN RPV EMPLOYMENT	VII-A-18
TASK 7A.1.13	VII-A-18
PLAN CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING	VII-A-19
TASK 7A.1.14	VII-A-19
DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN	VII-A-20
TASK 7A.1.15	VII-A-20
PLAN FOR SECURITY	VII-A-21
TASK 7A.1.16	VII-A-21
PLAN FOR CIVIL AFFAIRS	VII-A-22
TASK 7A.1.17	VII-A-22
PLAN FOR PROCESSING/HANDLING OF PRISONERS OF WAR	VII-A-24
TASK 7A.1.18	VII-A-25
PLAN INTEGRATION OF TACTICAL DECEPTION	VII-A-26
TASK 7A.1.19	VII-A-26
SEA TRANSIT	VII-A-27
TASK 7A.1.20	VII-A-27
PLAN REHEARSAL	VII-A-28
TASK 7A.1.21	VII-A-28
REVIEW COMMUNICATIONS PREPARATION	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.22	VII-A-29
PREPARE TACTICAL DECEPTION PLAN	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.23	VII-A-29
EXECUTE TACTICAL DECEPTION	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.24	VII-A-29
ARRIVE IN OBJECTIVE AREA	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.25	VII-A-29
CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.26	VII-A-29
CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION	VII-A-29
TASK 7A.1.27	VII-A-29
CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE	VII-A-30
TASK 7A.1.28	VII-A-30
CONDUCT RPV OPERATIONS	VII-A-31
TASK 7A.1.29	VII-A-31
EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	VII-A-31
TASK 7A.1.30	VII-A-31
CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	VII-A-32
TASK 7A.1.31	VII-A-32
EMPLOY ECCM	

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK 7A.1.32	.....	VII-A-32
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7A.1.33	.....	VII-A-33
	CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE	
TASK 7A.1.34	.....	VII-A-34
	PREPARE FOR COMPOSITING OF THE MEU	
<u>MPS 7A.2 - GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)</u>		
TASK 7A.2.1	.....	VII-A-35
	CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7A.2.2	.....	VII-A-36
	DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	
TASK 7A.2.3.	.....	VII-A-38
	PLAN FOR INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION	
TASK 7A.2.4	.....	VII-A-39
	PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	
TASK 7A.2.5	.....	VII-A-39
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING	
TASK 7A.2.6	.....	VII-A-41
	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS	
TASK 7A.2.7	.....	VII-A-42
	IMPLEMENT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES	
TASK 7A.2.8	.....	VII-A-43
	INTEGRATE TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE	
TASK 7A.2.9	.....	VII-A-44
	PLANS FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.2.10	.....	VII-A-45
	INITIATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING	
TASK 7A.2.11	.....	VII-A-46
	INITIATE SECURITY PLANNING	
TASK 7A.2.12	.....	VII-A-47
	INITIATE CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7A.2.13	.....	VII-A-48
	DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN	
TASK 7A.2.14	.....	VII-A-49
	EXECUTE ASSAULT LANDING	
TASK 7A.2.15	.....	VII-A-50
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION ASHORE	
TASK 7A.2.16	.....	VII-A-52
	OPERATE A COMMAND POST	
TASK 7A.2.17	.....	VII-A-54
	CONTROL OPERATIONS	
TASK 7A.2.18	.....	VII-A-55
	COORDINATE INTERNAL ORGANIZATION OF THE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER	
TASK 7A.2.19	.....	VII-A-55
	CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE	
TASK 7A.2.20	.....	VII-A-56
	CONTROL WITHDRAWAL SEAWARD	
<u>MPS 7A.3 - AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)</u>		
TASK 7A.3.1	.....	VII-A-57
	INITIATE STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.2	.....	VII-A-59
	INITIATE INTELLIGENCE PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.3	.....	VII-A-61
	INITIATE LOGISTICS PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.4	.....	VII-A-62
	CONDUCT AVIATION COMMAND AND CONTROL PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.5	.....	VII-A-64
	CONDUCT ANTIAIR WARFARE PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.6	.....	VII-A-65
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.7	.....	VII-A-66
	CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 7A.3.8	.....	VII-A-67
	CONDUCT OFFENSIVE AIR SUPPORT (OAS)	

TASK 7A.3.9	.....	VII-A-69
	CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE	
TASK 7A.3.10	.....	VII-A-70
	COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING	
TASK 7A.3.11	.....	VII-A-71
	CONDUCT ACE BRIEFING	
TASK 7A.3.12	.....	VII-A-72
	COORDINATE ACE EXECUTIVE	

MPS 7A.4 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)

TASK 7A.4.1	.....	VII-A-73
	CONDUCT CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7A.4.2	.....	VII-A-75
	CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PLANNING	
TASK 7A.4.3	.....	VII-A-76
	DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.4.4	.....	VII-A-77
	CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION	
TASK 7A.4.5	.....	VII-A-78
	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY	
TASK 7A.4.6	.....	VII-A-78
	PLAN SUPPLY	
TASK 7A.4.7	.....	VII-A-79
	PLAN MAINTENANCE SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.4.8	.....	VII-A-80
	PLAN MOTOR TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.4.9	.....	VII-A-81
	CONDUCT LANDING SUPPORT PLANNING	
TASK 7A.4.10	.....	VII-A-83
	PLAN DELIBERATE ENGINEERING SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.4.11	.....	VII-A-84
	PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS	
TASK 7A.4.12	.....	VII-A-85
	PLAN HEALTH SERVICES	
TASK 7A.4.13	.....	VII-A-88
	PLAN CSSE DEFENSE	
TASK 7A.4.14	.....	VII-A-89
	PLAN MILITARY POLICE (MP) SUPPORT	
TASK 7A.4.15	.....	VII-A-90
	PLAN MP SUPPORT FOR BATTLEFIELD CIRCULATION CONTROL	
TASK 7A.4.16	.....	VII-A-90
	PLAN MP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL	
TASK 7A.4.17	.....	VII-A-91
	CONDUCT LAW ENFORCEMENT PLANNING	
TASK 7A.4.18	.....	VII-A-92
	PLAN FOR CONTROL OF PRISONERS OF WAR	
TASK 7A.4.19	.....	VII-A-94
	CONDUCT CIVIL AFFAIRS PLANNING	
TASK 7A.4.20	.....	VII-A-95
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS REHEARSAL	
TASK 7A.4.21	.....	VII-A-95
	OPERATE A LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER	
TASK 7A.4.22	.....	VII-A-96
	CONDUCT COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS	
TASK 7A.4.23	.....	VII-A-97
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7A.4.24	.....	VII-A-97
	EMPLOY ECCM	
TASK 7A.4.25	.....	VII-A-98
	PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES	
TASK 7A.4.26	.....	VII-A-98
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	
TASK 7A.4.27	.....	VII-A-99
	EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	
TASK 7A.4.28	.....	VII-A-100
	EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX, ETC.)	

INTRODUCTION:

This portion of the Marine Corps Readiness Evaluation System (MCCRES) contains Mission Performance Standards (MPS's) that evaluate planning, preparation, and execution of tactical tasks performed by the elements internal to the Marine Expeditionary Unit (MEU); i.e., MEU command element, ground combat element (GCE), aviation combat element (ACE), and combat service support element (CSSE). The MEU command element provides the centralized control and coordination of the operation as well establishing liaison with senior and supporting staffs from other services.

The composition of MAGTF elements will differ with the variety of missions and forces assigned. The MPS's have been prepared to encompass the majority of those functions that a MEU command element can anticipate being required to accomplish in combat. The MPS's for the GCE, ACE, and CSSE are organized in the same manner.

A related aspect of a MEU evaluation is the degree of participation by the ATF staff. If the CATF and staff do not participate to the degree envisioned in Marine Corps doctrine, many of the tasks and standard relating to the various aspects of planning cannot be completely accomplished by the MEU regardless of the amount of effort expended. Evaluators faced with this situation should use the "Not Applicable" notable and make comment for the TEGC in the comments column of the MPS.

It is recommended that commanders use MCCRES standards to establish training goals, and take every opportunity to informally evaluate their units. The MCCRES system provides the commander with a test to evaluate the current combat readiness and training of his unit, to identify strengths and weakness, and use that information to prioritize the unit's future training requirements.

Of particular importance in the use of the MPS's contained in this volume is the fact that many of the planning and coordination functions described in the tasks and standards can occur either in vary order or simultaneously. The effective use of these MPS's requires that the evaluator retain sufficient flexibility to examine various activities prior to arriving at conclusions.

MCCRES elements contained in this volume presupposes the personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards; but, it is acknowledged that sufficient units, personnel, supplies and equipment are not always available. The standards are written in order to conduct an evaluation. The unit is not penalized if it cannot attempt all the standards. When other external factors contribute to limiting the MEU's combat readiness, it should be noted in the "comments" column of an evaluation sheet and recorded in the overall evaluation report.

The command element (CE) is a permanent organization. It is composed of the commander and supporting staff it provides the command, control, and coordination essential for effective planning and execution of operations. It also contains the long-range reconnaissance, intelligence, and electronic warfare (EW) capabilities derived from units resident within the surveillance, reconnaissance, and intelligence (SRI) group.

The ground combat element (GCE) conducts ground operations. It is usually constructed around a reinforced infantry battalion. The GCE also includes appropriate combat support and combat service support units.

The aviation combat element (ACE) provides aviation support. Support is based on the tactical situation and the MEU's mission. The ACE is usually constructed around a reinforced aircraft squadron. The ACE plays a key role in combined arms. Coordination between GCE and ACE is achieved through air sections organic to all GCE units and by the Marine air command and control system (MACCS).

The combat service support element (CSSE) provides a full range of combat service support necessary to accomplish a MEU's mission. It is organized to provide supply, maintenance, transportation, deliberate engineering, medical and dental, automated information systems, exchange, utilities, legal, landing support (port/airfield support operations), disbursing, prisoner of war, and graves registration service.

Submit recommended changes to this Volume to the Commanding General, Marine Corps Combat Development Command (MCCDC), (TE 31), Quantico, VA 22134-5050. Each recommended change should cite the specific item, volume page, paragraph, and line of text, as appropriate, and should include comments and recommendations.

7A.1 MEU COMMAND ELEMENTTASK: 7A.1.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by subordinate elements. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed and rotary wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The MEU is formed, has received an initial brief, and has been requested to provide input for the report for the initiating directive to the CINC.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Provides MEU input for the drafting of the higher command elements initiating directive.
- .2_____ Develops preliminary staff estimates prior to the receipt of the initiating directive and the initial planning conference based on known facts and preliminary intelligence updates.
- .3_____ Reviews existing contingency plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .4_____ Issues a warning order to subordinate elements after CLF's acceptance of preliminary estimates.
- .5_____ Determines intelligence and other information requirements, and exploits all theater and national resources. (See Task: 7A.1.2 DIRECTION OF INTELLIGENCE EFFORT.)
- .6_____ Reviews essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and recent vulnerability assessments, and initiates immediate measures to reduce OPSEC indicators.
- .7_____ Coordinates MEU input to any requirement (AV 8's, AH-1's, LAAD, crew-served weapons) for emergency defense of the ATF during the transit phase if CVBG or land based aircraft are not available. (KI)
- .8_____ Coordinates with the ATF to re contest AEW (Airborne Early Warning) support from higher commands if operations will be located outside the protective envelope of a CVGB.
- .9_____ Analyzes the mission in the initiating directive to identify specified and implied tasks. (KI)
- .10_____ Prior to the CATF/CLF initial planning conference, develops a proposed general course of action for the ATF for discussion.
- .11_____ Determines, in concert with the CATF, ATF objectives, the seizure of which ensures the accomplishment of the ATF mission.
- .12_____ Identifies and recommends landing sites, and concurrently prepares CLF mission statement for joint CATF/CLF decision.
- .13_____ Receives LF mission statement concurrence, and CATF's designation of landing sites.
- .14_____ Issues initial planning guidance to subordinate elements which addresses all aspects of the operation; ground, air, and CSS.
- .15_____ Gives preliminary consideration to the sea echelon concept and rehearsal schedule Early in planning.
- .16_____ Gives preliminary consideration to advance force, subsidiary, deception, and supporting operations.
- .17_____ Provides MEU input on the tentative selection of H-hour and D-day.
- .18_____ Promulgates, upon receipt of the ATF planning directive, an LF planning directive or schedule.
- .19_____ Selects a minimum number of landing force objectives, based on METT-T, that complement the ATF objectives, ensure the accomplishment of the mission, and provide sufficient depth to the force beachhead to protect the ATF objectives. Submits objectives to CATF for review.
- .20_____ Selects a proposed beachhead simultaneously with the selection of LF objectives, and submits the proposal to CATF for review.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .21____ Evaluates the tentative landing sites, and selects with CATF's concurrence, primary and alternate landing areas.
- .22____ Coordinates a decision brief for the commander on specific landing beaches within the beachhead based on the recommendations of the GCE.
- .23____ Coordinates a decision brief by the GCE and ACE staff on proposed helicopter landing zone(s) to include approach and retirement lanes, and control measures.
- .24____ Coordinates a decision brief for the commander on proposed drop zone(s) and landing zone(s) during joint operations, when airborne or air transported joint forces are involved.
- .25____ Promulgates MEU planning guidance which addresses all aspects of the operation; ground, air, and CSS. (KI)
- .26____ MEU CE develops and briefs proposed courses of action.
- .27____ Coordinates the preparation of estimates of supportability (ground, air, and CSS) based upon the proposed courses of action.
- .28____ Briefs GCE, ACE, CSSE, and the MEU staffs' estimates of supportability to the commander.
- .29____ Announces the commander's decision, and provides his overall concept of operations to subordinate elements.
- .30____ Prepares a written or graphic presentation of MEU concept of operations ashore in broad outline, to include the task organization, and issues the concept as an outline plan. (KI)
- .31____ ACE and CSSE commanders brief the concept of CSS and air support for the MEU commander's approval.
- .32____ Ensures mission statements are developed for each subordinate element of the MEU.
- .33____ Monitors the GCE's development of a detailed scheme of maneuver, landing plan, and plan of supporting fires.
- .34____ Coordinates the date and hour of landing during the development of the operations plan with subordinate commanders and ATF staff.
- .35____ Maintains close and continuous planning coordination with ATF, adjacent, and supporting headquarters to include joint and combined commands.
- .36____ Develops the operation plan, landing plan, counter-mechanized plan, and alternate plans.
- .37____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop plans.
- .38____ Coordinates all communication requirements for subordinate, adjacent and higher level circuits to include frequencies, callsigns, satellite access requests, encryption hardware/software, and authentic materials. (See Task: 7A.1.8 DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT.)
- .39____ Establishes review procedures which provide for continual updating of aircraft, AAV, and landing craft availability.
- .40____ Establishes review procedures which provide for continual updating of the troop list.
- .41____ Arranges for commanders and staff reconnaissance of the AOA, if the situation permits.
- .42____ Coordinates responsibilities for the conduct of civil affairs per the MEU SOP.
- .43____ Requests public affairs (PA) guidance, and begins development of appropriate PA plans for inclusion in the operations plan.
- .44____ Establishes NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate elements to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
- .45____ Consolidates en route training and rehearsal plans for all elements of the MEU.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .46_____ Continuously reevaluates and updates decisions on advance force, deception, subsidiary, and supporting operations throughout the planning process.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Preliminary mission statements will be provided to allow the MEU to commence planning. Though shipboard positions will enhance training realism, a scenario for crisis planning prime- to embarkation can be used. Specific mission assignments are covered in MPS 7A.5 through MPS 7A.10 of this volume.

KEY INDICATORS:

INITIAL ANALYSIS

The initial analysis includes, but is not limited to:

1. Obtaining all information, available concerning the area of operations.
2. Analyzing the initiating directive.
3. Reviewing the adequacy and readiness of the forces assigned.
4. Developing tentative mission statements and a broad plan of action for the LF.
5. Determining staff requirements.
6. Issuing of initial planning guidance, policies, and commencement of concurrent planning.

CLF PLANNING GUIDANCE

Guidance includes at least the following:

1. Restates the mission.
2. Commander's analysis of the overall mission, and intent.
3. Assumptions necessary because of lack of information.
4. Promulgation of previous decisions.
5. Commander's policies; e.g., rules of engagement, operational constraints, civilian and public affairs.
6. Broad courses of action which CLF desires considered.
7. General fire support plans to include employment of special weapons.

CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS

The development of the concept of landing force operations ashore begins as a general overview of how the mission is to be accomplished. This includes an overall formation for landing, a general scheme of maneuver for the LF, principal LF objectives, a general task organization, fire support for landing and subsequent operations, allocation of ship-to-shore landing means, plans for deception operations, and plans for any subsidiary landings. As the subordinate elements begin planning, the concept is refined and becomes more specific, with identification of helicopter LZ's approach and retirement lanes, beach exits, and other critical factors affecting accomplishment of the actual operation. Factors that must be considered include:

1. Mission of the LF.
2. Characteristics of the AOA.
3. LF objectives.
4. Enemy capabilities.

ENCLOSURE (1)

5. Forces available.
6. Airfields, LZ's, air control sites, etc.
7. Plan for CSS.

EMERGENCY DEFENSE

MAGTF assets are not included in the planning for the routine defense of the ATF as that function is provided by their own weapons systems, preplanned CYBG cover, or land based assets. In an emergency landing force assets may be used as B final option for ATF defense when:

1. Increasing tensions, intelligence, or defense conditions indicate an attack is imminent, or the ATF is under actual attack.
2. The governing rules of engagement permit the intercept or engagement of aircraft/boats of forces declared hostile.
3. Other circumstances or situations occur so that the CATF and CLF agree that an emergency exists.

TASK: 7A.1.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The MEU commander and CATF have agreed to form a Joint Intelligence Center (JIB).

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate upon receipt of the initiating directive. (KI)
- .2____ Prepares a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance. (KI)
- .3____ Determines, based on the assigned mission and guidance from the commander, intelligence requirements, basic requirements, essential elements of information (EEI's), and other intelligence requirements (OIR's), of the landing force as a whole.
- .4____ Assigns a priority of effort to satisfy these requirements based on the situation and the MEU commander's guidance.
- .5____ Determines LF requirements for maps, charts, imagery, photographs, and other graphic aids.
- .6____ Requests Pre D-day aerial imagery support from higher or adjacent commands.
- .7____ Phrases the commander's EEI's in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts: a positive directive; qualifying questions; and statements directing special attention.
- .8____ Uses the collection plan as a basis for issuing orders and requests to collection agencies.
- .9____ Makes Early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .10____ Assists higher, adjacent, and subordinate commanders in their collection efforts.
- .11____ Incorporates the orders for the collection of information into the intelligence annex of the operations order or as fragmentary orders.
- .12____ Submits requests for intelligence to the JIB, or through them to higher, adjacent, and supporting commands.
- .13____ Requests information on the overhead times of applicable enemy satellite systems.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14____ Tasks the embarked radio battalion detachment to integrate SIGINT, EW, and COMSEC during planning and throughout all phases of the operation. (See Task: 7A.1.4 PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE.)
- .15____ Develops an aerial reconnaissance and surveillance plan that includes a sensor surveillance plan, and submits request to CATF for those mission requiring theater collection asset support.
- .16____ Manages the collection effort continually to ensure that orders and requests are understood and fulfilled.
- .17____ Publishes effective signs and countersigns (challenge and password).
- .18____ Prepares an intelligence annex that defines the manner in which the intelligence operations of the MEU will be conducted.
- .19____ Ensures intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the MEU SOP for intelligence.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of this preliminary estimate is to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to formulate basic decisions and to assist him in issuing planning guidance.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Intelligence estimation is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the initiating directive and continues throughout all phases of the planning process. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with the characteristics of the terrain in the objective area, anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected for the operation; the location, characteristics and composition of available beaches; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy force in the objective area; and the location of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concerned with the accomplishment of the five basic intelligence tasks:

1. Determination of requirements (continuous process).
2. Preparation of collection plans.
3. Processing and analysis techniques.
4. Collection of confirming information.
5. Dissemination of updated intelligence information.

The intelligence estimate is written if planning time allows. The subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice and are normally based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. These changes are incorporated into the basic written estimate as soon as possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-6

TASK: 7A.1.3 PLAN INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU is in receipt of the initiating directive and has begun planning. The ATF is en route to the AOA. A CVBG is also en route. In addition to those collection assets normally available to the MEU, a sensor emplacement team with both ground and air delivered sensors are onboard.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Develops a dynamic collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, and reflects the status of the collection effort.
- .2 ____ Utilizes the staff counterintelligence officer to provide CI analysis of the operating area.
- .3 ____ Develops, in coordination with the MEU judge advocate and S-3, a list of civilian population centers and places protected by the law of war.
- .4 ____ Utilizes an intelligence collection worksheet or other systematic method to manage the collection effort.
- .5 ____ Develops a manageable and complete means of coordinating the collection effort which relates requirements to indications, specific information sought, and particular information tasks to collection agencies.
- .6 ____ Identifies reporting instructions; i.e., time constraints and to whom to report.
- .7 ____ Coordinates with collection agencies in the preparation of tasking assignments to obtain advice or, the feasibility of tasks and to provide for maximum lead time.
- .8 ____ Utilizes all organic collection assets as well as special intelligence operations, special reconnaissance units, and unconventional warfare forces available to the MEU to support the collection effort.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.4 PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has a radio battalion detachment assigned. The MEU has received an initiating directive to conduct an amphibious assault. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed - and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Receives MEU commander's initial planning guidance.
- .2____ Conducts an analysis of the MEU mission, and initiates liaison with the appropriate CATF staff members.
- .3____ Develops intelligence/information requirements on the vulnerability of enemy forces to ECM/ESM actions and the capability of enemy forces to conduct ECM/ESM against friendly forces.
- .4____ Recommends procedures to determine how to engage the enemy's C3 structure, and standards for decisions on whether to listen, jam, or destroy enemy activities.
- .5____ Advises S-2 on optimum employment of collection, deception, DF, and ECM/ESM assets of the radio battalion detachment, and prepares an estimate of supportability.
- .6____ Considers employment of radio reconnaissance team(s).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7____ Coordinates with S-2 on requests for theater/national assets such as carrier based EW aircraft or satellite capabilities.
- .8____ Coordinates with operational planners for the integration of SIGINT, ground KU, and COMSEC during all phases of the operation.
- .9____ Coordinates with the CEO for COMSEC monitoring, analysis, and reporting.
- .10____ Ensures special intelligence communications support has been identified and requested.
- .11____ Recommends procedures to be used in coordinating electronic jamming to preclude interference with friendly C3.
- .12____ Submits requirements to the CEO for frequencies/callsigns/communications security materials for inclusion in the CEOI/communications plan.
- .13____ Coordinates with CATF cryptologic elements to ensure that LF cryptologic objectives are supported.
- .14____ Coordinates with S-4/CEO on specialized logistical requirements.
- .15____ Plans and coordinates ECCM training for the supported units using their organic equipment.
- .16____ Coordinates the security support requirements of the radio battalion detachment when deployed ashore with the S-2/3.
- .17____ Develops procedures for the immediate delivery of traffic from collection positions to the processing and reporting elements.
- .18____ Issues a warning order to subordinates.
- .19____ Prepares the Signals Intelligence Appendix to the Intelligence Annex in coordination with the 5-2/3/EWO.
- .20____ Provides representation and information to the S/EWCC and/or establishes an operations, control and analysis element (OCAE) when required ashore.
- .21____ Disseminates tactical and technical reports as required in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.5 PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has published a collection plan and has begun to receive reports from the asked elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison.
- .2____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .3____ Analyzes information to isolate significant elements with respect to the mission and operations of the command.
- .4____ Integrates the collected information with other outside sources (national/theater) to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities which might influence the mission of the command.
- .5____ Interprets information to determine significance, and forms logical conclusions which serve as the basis for determining the effects on the current intelligence estimate, and subsequent operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6_____ Request an estimate of the enemy's time lag in processing, developing, distributing, and acting upon their own overhead photography or satellite information.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.6 DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE

CONDITION(S): The MEU S-2 section has received reports from tasked elements and has processed the information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, security.
- .2_____ Determines form of presentation, and in coordination with the S-3 and CEO, selects the best of transmission.
- .3_____ Provides responsive, timely and pertinent intelligence support to all elements of the MEU.
- .4_____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the CATF target list after approval by the MEU commander.
- .5_____ Coordinates with ATF staff to ensure procedures are established to alert units to changing weather conditions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.7 PLAN FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially may require an amphibious landing. CATF has established a general policy as to the types of targets to be attacked by air and naval gunfire (NGF), and has an established Supporting Arms Coordination Center (SACC). The MEU commander's guidance and overall concept of operations has been received. The GCE's FSCC will coordinated fires once established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Begins initial planning upon receipt of the warning order utilizing the factors of METT-T. (KI)
- .2_____ Maintains close and continuous liaison with the ATF, assigning appropriate fire support coordination personnel as watch standers in the SACC.
- .3_____ Designates a LF fire support coordinator.
- .4_____ Promulgates ammunition and target restrictions, rules of engagement, and any policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of artillery, NGF, or air support based on the commander's planning guidance.
- .5_____ Considers the effect of any required emergency defense of the ATF during the transit phase on the later availability of air, NGF, and air defense assets.

- .6____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to the MEU S-2 requesting intelligence/combat information on the area of operations, enemy, and weather.
- .7____ Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of target acquisition assets to ensure their integration or the collection effort.
- .8____ Disseminates, in a timely and continuous manner, that fire support planning information require and requested by the GCE and ACE.
- .9____ Establishes fire support coordination reports and procedures as stated in the published SOP.
- .10____ Uses targeting procedures per MEU SOP that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data.
- .11____ Prepares nominations for the ATF target list and forwards them to CATF upon the MEU commander's approval.
- .12____ Establishes targeting priorities using the target value analysis system or a target precedence list.
- .13____ Reviews the initial estimate of fire support requirements developed by the GCE.
- .14____ Prepares an estimate of supportability, addressing those considerations that facilitate the integration of fire support within the MEU.
- .15____ Reviews the ELF, and artillery estimates of supportability produced by the GCE and ACE.
- .16____ Tests subordinate elements to assign fire support control personnel to accompany the advance force.
- .17____ Submits preliminary plans for fire support based upon the MEW's concept of operations ashore, which identify air and NGF requirements to the CATF, and allow for a tentative allocation of aircraft and ships to occur.
- .18____ Reviews, and after commander's approval of priorities, forwards deep air support targets to CATF.
- .19____ Reviews artillery requirements and submits them to MEU commander for approval.
- .20____ Briefs the commander on any shortfalls, requests for additional fire support assets, and necessary adjustments to plans prior to consolidation of overall LF and naval requirements.
- .21____ Monitors adjustments to preliminary plans in the event that a shortfall of fire supports cannot be supported from either organic or outside sources.
- .22____ Coordinates the concurrent development of air, NGF, and artillery fire support plans by the SACC and FSAC.
- .23____ Provides representatives to the target information section and provides target intelligence requirements to the JIB via the MEU S-2.
- .24____ Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's concept and priorities, and complement his proposed operations.
- .25____ Prepares a target list which integrates lists of targets from subordinate elements and augments with others whose destruction is considered vital to the LF.
- .26____ Coordinates with the TACC/SACC when afloat, and the DASC/FSAC if established ashore for aircraft ingress and egress routes for CAS and assault support missions to ensure concurrent use of airspace with other supporting arms.
- .27____ Maintains and disseminates a list of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war.
- .28____ Coordinates with ACE and ATF air planners to designate an aircraft ordnance jettison area.
- .29____ Submits the fire support plan to the commander for approval following consolidation of all input.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .30_____ Following review and the commander's approval, submits detailed fire support plans for air and use to CATF as the LF's detailed sir and NGF requirements (KI)
- .31_____ Publishes the LF fire support plan as separate supporting appendixes to the operations annex of the operations order.
- .32_____ Coordinates with the ACE in the preparation of a pilots/controllers handbook.
- .33_____ Ensures an adequate number and type of liaison officers/representatives are planned for each phase of the operation.
- .34_____ Reviews prior planning again and conducts continuous fire support planning throughout the amphibious assault, and subsequent operations ashore. (KI)
- .35_____ Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence/combat information on the threat.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

FACTORS OF METT-T

- 1. Mission/Commander's concept.
- 2. Enemy targets and fire support capabilities.
- 3. Troops/fire support assets available, target acquisition sources, and ammunition status.
- 4. Terrain and weather conditions.
- 5. Time available.

FIRE SUPPORT PLAN

This concept provides guidance in the following areas:

- 1. General targets or areas which are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver fires.
- 2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation.
- 3. Exclusive or exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or accomplishing a particular task.
- 4. Use of preparation fires and/or SEAD, and if so, the duration and intensity of such fires.
- 5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).
- 6. For artillery, in general terms, the time and place of landing.

LF AIR AND NGF REQUIREMENTS

These requirements include, as a Expropriate, specific targets to be attacked, desired effect on targets, and the delivery means recommended; amounts of ammunition to be expended and schedules for delivery; and specific landing force elements to be supported and the types of support required. The requirements are submitted with enough detail as to require only approval and implementation by CATF.

ENCLOSURE (1)

REVIEW OF FIRE PLAN

The FSC reviews the air, artillery, NGF plans to ensure that:

1. The landing and scheme of maneuver are fully supported.
 2. All known or suspected targets capable of interfering with the landing or subsequent operations ashore are scheduled for attack without unnecessary duplication.
 3. There is neither unwarranted interference between supporting fires and tactical operations, nor among support arms with each other.
 4. Procedures are delineated for the shifting of coordination as the GCE's FSCC establishes itself ashore.
 5. Procedures for passing damage assessments to higher and subordinate elements are established.
-

TASK: 7A.1.8 DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. The threat forces have an, EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Conducts mission analysis and identifies communications implied tasks.
- .2____ Requests available communications related intelligence and information on the enemy, terrain, and weather from available sources; i.e., S-2, ATF staff, etc.
- .3____ Review task organization and command relationships.
- .4____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability based on the MEU commander's proposed courses of action.
- .5____ Refines concept of communications support based on commander's guidance.
- .6____ Reviews the communications SOP, contingency plans, lessons learned, etc., for applicability.
- .7____ Prepares and publishes a communications plan that provides for reliability, speed, flexibility, and security.
- .8____ Demonstrates knowledge of all communications available; i.e., AUTODIN, AUTOVON, AUTOSEVOCOM, and DSSCS while en route to and within the objective area.
- .9____ Validates internal and external needlines for all phases of the operation.
- .10____ Identifies types of information and estimated volume to be exchanged; i.e., data, voice, facsimile, etc.
- .11____ Submits recommended prioritization of communications circuits.
- .12____ Employs circuit profile analysis techniques.
- .13____ Identifies critical low density repair items and major communications end items for usage and maintenance support.
- .14____ Reviews and monitors overall communication readiness of the MEU.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-12

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.9 CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially require a amphibious landing by elements of the MEU, and the CEO has commenced communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with the MEU staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchange information on communications support.
- .2____ Coordinates with communications personnel of adjacent/higher command elements to identify doctrinal and unique requirements, liaison requirements, and exchange information.
- .3____ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unit requirements, and exchanges information on communications support requirements and assets available.
- .4____ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the planned communication system.
- .5____ Determines and provides for the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .6____ Determines and requests personnel and equipment augmentation (ATF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy), if required.
- .7____ Identifies and requests external (ATF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy) support; i.e., frequencies, telecommunications services requests (TSR,s), communications guard shifts AUTODIN access requirements, satellite access requests, etc.
- .8____ Submits LF frequency requests based on the use of frequency propagation analysis tools (previous experience, ECAC, Advanced Prophet, etc.).
- .9____ Submits the MEU prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements to the ATF.
- .10____ Coordinates with the ACE and MEU FSC in the development of the communications portion of the pilots/controllers handbook.
- .11____ Establishes restoration priorities based on the commander's guidance.
- .12____ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communication plan.
- .13____ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, MHE, POL, berthing, etc., to the CSSE.
- .14____ Participates in embarkation planning to ensure spread loading, proper off loading, and access to communications gear while embarked.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.10 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU staff is actively involved during the initial stages of communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Determines transmission security requirements.
- .2___ Determines emissions security requirements.
- .3___ Determines cryptological security requirements.
- .4___ Determines physical security requirements.
- .5___ Compiles communications access lists, and publishes appropriate procedures.
- .6___ Ensures sufficient intertheater COMSEC package (IC3CP) for Combined/Joint operations is held and meets mission requirements.
- .7___ Develops and coordinates a COMSEC plan to include COMSEC monitoring.
- .8___ Ensures that subordinates possess the required keying materials and CMS equipment.
- .9___ Coordinates the control, acquisition, holding, storage, and distribution of COMSEC materials with the CMS custodian.
- .10___ Plans for adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces.
- .11___ Develops an emergency action plan (EAP) for use when established ashore and/or afloat.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.11 ENSURE INTEROPERABILITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. Additional resources from theater and national assets will be made available to support MEU operations ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Preplanning conferences are hosted or attended to ensure the integration and coordination of efforts.
- .2___ Identifies unique communications requirements; i.e., equipment, format, procedures, etc., based on the specific command and control relationships established.
- .3___ Provides for voice, message, and/or data link exchanges between the MEU and external control agencies.
- .4___ Determines liaison requirements to include equipment, personnel, procedures, and communications.
- .5___ Identifies unique CMS considerations, such as NATO or allied forces interoperability requirements.
- .6___ Coordinates intertheater CMS contingency packages for subordinates to ensure equipment compatibility and adequacy of inventory.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.12 PLAN RPV EMPLOYMENT

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU is task organized with a RPV element. The MEU is preparing for operation ashore; however, the RPV's will conduct shipboard operations initially.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Receives warning order and initiates detailed planning immediately.
- .2____ Develops an RPV estimate of supportability based on commander's guidance and courses of actions.
- .3____ Advises the supported unit commander on specific recommendations for the employment of, and payloads for, RPV missions.
- .4____ Coordinates mission priorities with the S-2/3 to gather Early intelligence and information on the area of operations, weather, and enemy, with particular attention to the threat AAA and enemy troop locations.
- .5____ Coordinates with ATF personnel for launch and recovery time schedules, support equipment requirements, and integration with ATF operations.
- .6____ Determines basing options ashore for the RPV, and the sitting for the ground control, tracking control, and remote receiving units.
- .7____ Requests a terrain analysis which highlights elevation data of the AOA to assist in the sitting of ground control systems and remote receiving units, and for developing mission profiles.
- .8____ Task organizes subordinates based on the assigned mission, available assets, threat, and basing decisions.
- .9____ Coordinates local security requirements.
- .10____ Reviews pre-planned mission requests for RPV support.
- .11____ Coordinates proposed missions with the MEU staff to exploit the multisensor imagery and aerial observation capabilities.
- .12____ Establishes airspace management procedures with the ATF and ACE to ensure the safe employment of RPV's to include provisions for return home mode contingencies.
- .13____ Coordinates with radio battalion personnel to plan ground EW and COMSEC requirements.
- .14____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's when developing the plan for the employment of assets.
- .15____ Coordinates flight planning with both COC and SACC/FSCC personnel to deconflict planned mission routes with NGF, artillery, manned aircraft, and mortar support.
- .16____ Coordinates with the S-2 to ensure RPV missions complement the collection efforts of other collectors.
- .17____ Ensures criteria is established for go/no go situations including a threat and weather matrix.
- .18____ Plans missions to be conducted at night and during periods of low visibility.
- .19____ Recommends RPV's be used in various multimission roles; i.e., adjustment of fire, BDA, LZ studies, route reconnaissance, navigation aid to friendly forces, etc.
- .20____ Develops plans and procedures to disseminate combat information collected in a timely manner.

- .21_____ Provides input on RPV operations for inclusion in the operations plan/order.
- .22_____ Plans the effective use of remote receiving stations to exploit the real time reporting capability of RPV's.
- .23_____ Coordinates and integrates RPV flights with other supporting arms, artillery, mortars, NFG, and manned aircraft for inclusion in the daily air tasking order (ATO).
- .24_____ Ensures procedures are in place to handle immediate requests from all elements of the MEU.
- .25_____ Identifies communications frequency requirements to the CEO in a timely manner.
- .26_____ Ensures assigned frequencies are allocated, especially for the RPV uplink and downlink, and have adjacent channel separation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.13 PLAN CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires an amphibious landing By cements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. The MEU 5-4 is coordinating the development of the MEU's concept of logistic support includes CSS for the GCE, ACE, and CSSE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Analyzes the mission to begin to identify inherent CSS requirements. (KI)
- .2_____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .3_____ Coordinates with the S-3 in the analysis of the proposed courses of action to determine the type units and rough numbers of troops who will be committed ashore, commanders priorities for support, LFORM, equipment densities, maintenance support availability, distances involved, critical weapons systems, and the anticipated duration of the operation.
- .4_____ Studies the S-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information on the area to determine climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, in country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, supplies stockpiles which may be available locally, etc.
- .5_____ Prepares in coordination with the CSSE, GCE, and ACE logistics planners, a detailed logistics estimate of supportability which compares all CSS related factors influencing each proposed tactical course of action; i.e., logistics requirements, availability of means, and identifies shortfalls.
- .6_____ Establishes coordination with ATF agencies involved with CSS planning and operations.
- .7_____ Reviews the CSSE personnel and equipment lists, with the CSSE, to ensure the organic CSSE is able to provide the required logistical support.
- .8_____ Determines, in coordination with the CSSE, consumption factors for all classes of supply (to include ordnance) for the type operation being planned.
- .9_____ Determines, in coordination with the CSSE, locally available or interservice sources of food, water, fuel, medical, and consumable supplies of all types.
- .10_____ Coordinates with the S-1 and CSSE for a review of transportation assets available, and recommends an evacuation policy to the MEU commander.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .11_____ Determines, in coordination with the ATF and LF surgeons/CSSE, medical requirements for the evacuation of casualties, medical and dental support, medical supply, establishment ashore of primary treatment centers, and temporary hospitalization.
- .12_____ Identifies, in coordination with the S-1 and S-3, civil affairs support requirements, and compares those needs with available in country resources in order to determine shortfalls.
- .13_____ Determines, in coordination with the CSSE, the types and quantities of supplies to be carried ashore by landing force units as prescribed loads, as well as the types and quantities required for floating dumps, prestaged helicopter lifted supplies, and follow-on supplies.
- .14_____ Identifies, in coordination with the CSSE, requirements for base camp development, rehabilitation, or other construction requirements.
- .15_____ Reviews quantities, types of equipment and supplies computed by the CSSE that are required for each successive stage of the operation, including their assigned priorities of issue.
- .16_____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop the CSS plan.
- .17_____ Considers, in coordination with all elements, cross decking requirements to support the CSS concept as well as movement of personnel required to complete staff planning.
- .18_____ Reviews CSS requirement shortfalls, problem areas, and limitations, and following MEU commander's concurrence forwards unfilled requirements to higher command element.
- .19_____ Reviews the concept of CSS, proposed by the CSSE, and coordinates any changes required.
- .20_____ Develops a concept for CSS which provides support functions to be performed as far forward geographically as possible to eliminate delay time in filling requests.
- .21_____ Prepares, in coordination with the CSSE, appropriate annexes and other input to the operations plan/order.
- .22_____ Participates in the activation and operation of a tactical logistical group (TACLOG) for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with the MEU 5-3, GCE, ACE, and CSSE.
- .23_____ Coordinates with the ACE and CSSE for the planning of FARP sites in support of follow-on missions after the initial ship to shore movement.
- .24_____ Identifies, in coordination with the CSSE and ATF agencies, additional sources of CSS, particularly facilities, supplies and transportation, and establishes procedures to allow for requesting those assets.
- .25_____ Coordinates with the S-2 to identify the threat to CSS operations in the rear and forward areas.
- .26_____ Outlines procedures for establishing priorities for CSS, and designates the S-4 as the staff member responsible for validating rapid requests prior to the CSSE filling the requests.
- .27_____ Develops legal and claims procedures for inclusion in the operations plan orders in coordination with the MEU SJA.
- .28_____ Reviews contingency plans and recommendations prepared by the CSSE to deal with identified shortfalls, CSS problems, and limitations.
- .29_____ Coordinates with the S-3 and ATF staff for the employment of helicopters, landing craft, and AAV's to support the logistical buildup during the ship-to-shore movement, and follow on resupply requirements.
- .30_____ Plans the locations of supporting and supported facilities that will assist future operations.
- .31_____ Coordinates with the S-3 and develops a plan for refugees and displaced persons.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

PRINCIPAL CONCERNS IN THE AREA OF OPERATIONS

Combat service support is primarily concerned with:

1. Provision of combat essential supplies (rations, water, ammunition, and POL) to the user.
2. Maintenance of weapons and equipment.
3. Sustaining personnel strengths via preventive medicine, casualty treatment, movement of replacements, law enforcement, and straggler control.
4. Supply.
5. Engineering.
6. Transportation.
7. Health services.
8. Services.

TASK: 7A.1.14 DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU is in receipt of an initiating directive that directs elements of the MEU to conduct an amphibious assault. The MEU commander has announced his concept of operations, and has approved the GCE's proposed scheme of maneuver.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Determines LF requirements for the ship-to-shore movement and available organic LF ship-to-shore assets.
- .2___ Allocates assets for use by subordinate elements, ensuring the allocation provides for the maximum support of the initial tactical operations ashore.
- .3___ Consolidates landing plans of subordinate elements, resolves conflicts, and ensures that the plan is totally integrated with the scheme of maneuver ashore and the fire support plan.
- .4___ Plans for flexibility in the landing of supporting arms and reserve elements.
- .5___ Considers enemy capabilities to countersurface and/or air assaults.
- .6___ Assigns elements of the LF one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .7___ Examines the landing plan to ensure that it is supportable with the shipping/airlift available and with any constraints imposed by embarkation shortfalls.
- .8___ Provides input to the ATF for the control afloat of landing craft, AAV's, helicopters, and floating dumps to ensure maximum support for the landing plan.
- .9___ Divides LF supplies into three general categories: prescribed loads, propositioned contingency supplies, and remaining LF supplies.
- .10___ Ensures the plan provides for the requisite logistical support for all forces ashore.
- .11___ Completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning/cross decking to occur.
- .12___ Develops alternate plans to cover foul weather interference and/or changes in the enemy situation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-18

- .13____ Requests additional assets from CATF, or adjusts plans accordingly, if available assets for ship-to-shore movement cannot satisfy the requirements.
- .14____ Punishes the landing plan as an appendix to the amphibious operations annex of the operation plan order.
- .15____ Assigns adequate personnel to TACLOG to advise Navy control personnel on the location of troops equipment, and supplies.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.15 PLAN FOR SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been tasked to conduct an amphibious landing and faces a potential threat from aircraft, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a night vision capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force(s) capabilities and intentions.
- .2____ Ensures operational planners at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
- .3____ Ensures the proposed rules of engagement provide for the security of friendly forces.
- .4____ Plans passive security measures to include dispersal, camouflage, hardening positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
- .5____ Directs the use of field expedient measures against enemy lasers as well as the use of filters and laser spectacles.
- .6____ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and oncall.
- .8____ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and air defense coverage.
- .9____ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for combat support and combat service support forces.
- .10____ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, overt and covert observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's), and other local security techniques.
- .11____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
- .12____ Plans for the positioning of LAAD units in depth within the objective area, and in point defense for vital areas.
- .13____ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures to notify and transport them, if required.
- .14____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .15____ Plans for the Early introduction of counterintelligence personnel.
- .16____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units, TRAP, mass casualties, etc.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.16 PLAN FOR CIVIL AFFAIRS

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU has been informed that friendly noncombatants are located within the area of interest. The MEU commander has designated staff cognizance of civil affairs activities to the S-3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Requests all available information on the intended area of interest to include customs, traditions, national and religious observances, cultural differences, sacred or forbidden places, and similar sensitive considerations.
- .2____ Requests intelligence information concerning the attitudes of the local populace toward U.S. forces.
- .3____ Requests intelligence and combat information on the current in country situation with emphasis on the effect of combat on the population in the area.
- .4____ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability concentrating on the estimated extent of civilian Interference (e.g., refugees, demonstrators, and by standards), the control/security measures necessary to minimize interference and protect civilians, and the availability of any emergency food, clothing, housing, and medical requirements.
- .5____ Coordinates the development of civilian affairs policy with the ATF planners to include civil reformation/ education, public health, public safety/property control, public works, and utilities.
- .6____ Integrates civil affairs activities with the planned scheme of maneuver.
- .7____ Conducts liaison with host Government military and civilian authorities Early in the planning if the situation allows.
- .8____ Develops in coordination with the AFT planners, proclamations, ordinances, orders, instructions, or other civil affairs guidance and regulations to ensure the required degree of control over the populace in order to provide for the security of forces, prevent civilian interference with operations, and protect civilians.
- .9____ Plans the programs required to control refugees and displaced persons and disseminates instructions to all subordinate elements.
- .10____ Coordinates with the ATF planners, the U.S. Department of State, and relief agencies for the evacuation of noncombatants.
- .11____ Coordinates with the ATF/LF surgeon and CSSE medical staff for the procedures to be used in the medical treatment and evacuation of sick or wounded civilians.
- .12____ Provides instructions for the handling of claims against the United States.
- .13____ Provides staff supervision over all attached civil affairs units, and makes recommendations as to the size and composition of those units.
- .14____ Prepares civil affairs estimates, and appropriate annexes to the operations order.
- .15____ Determines civil affairs reports required from subordinates, and provides reports to higher command elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-20

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.17 PLAN FOR PROCESSING/HANDLING OF PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit awaiting receipt of the initiating directive.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Plans, in coordination with the S-2, an estimate of the number of POW's to be included in the S-1 estimate of supportability.
- .2_____ Coordinates with the ATF staff to determine whether POW's are to be detained ashore or on ATF shipping, and the location of collection points.
- .3_____ Determines the requirement for HP support to collect, evacuate, and guard POW's.
- .4_____ Establishes procedures for the evacuation, administration, and protection of POW's per the SOP.
- .5_____ Publishes specific POW processing/handling instructions in the operation plan/order. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: Instructions for POW handling should include the following:

SEARCHING

POW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of POW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment. POW's should be tagged for identification and later matched with any documents/equipment found, and should be instructed not to talk to other POW's to prevent collaboration of stories.

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment, (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing, and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. When such documents are taken from a POW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, are must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual POW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the POW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of a POW be taken.

ENCLOSURE (1)

PERSONAL EFFECTS

Except as indicated below, POW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money, valuables, and protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from POW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of POW's by categories first requires that individual POW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of POW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate POW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex. Evacuate POW's to collection points under guard as soon as possible. Rapid initial processing will contribute to the timeliness of interrogation.

MEDICAL CARE

POW's are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any difference in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

TASK: 7A.1.18 PLAN INTEGRATION OF TACTICAL DECEPTION

CONDITION(S): Mission analysis has been conducted, and the MEU commander has requested that his staff study the information available and consider the integration of tactical deception with the scheme of maneuver. Planning time is limited.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ The overall mission and objective of the tactical deception is well understood.
- .2___ Analyzes the enemy perceptions of the operational area in coordination with S-2 and available intelligence sources.
- .3___ Determines enemy vulnerability to deception, identifying any enemy peculiarities or weaknesses.
- .4___ Collects available intelligence/combat information to determine if the enemy threat warrants the use of deception.
- .5___ Collects indications of what course of action the enemy "expects" us to take.
- .6___ Identifies opportunities for deception.
- .7___ Considers whether there are feasible courses of action upon which to build a realistic deception.
- .8___ Analyzes what possible courses of action are available to the enemy commanders.
- .9___ Identifies a logical opportunity to integrate the deception into the ground situation.
- .10___ Determines if enough information is known about the enemy sensor network to effectively feed false information.
- .11___ Analyzes advantages/disadvantages and risks associated with including deception operations.
- .12___ Evaluates whether the possible compromise of the deception will justify any loss of operational flexibility as well as the result on the operation if the deception is not effective.
- .13___ Analyzes whether COMSEC and OPSEC procedures are sufficient to conceal deception planning and subsequent operations, and more importantly, to deny the enemy knowledge of the true intentions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14____ Prepares a plan, that is believable to the enemy, consistent with the enemy's perception of our rear capabilities, tactical doctrine, SOP's, patterns, etc.
- .15____ Develops the deception plan with the same degree of thoroughness as the operation plan.
- .16____ Develops a deception story that provides adequate information to deter the enemy from taking any undesirable action, and causes the enemy to follow a predictable pattern.
- .17____ Develops a plan which considers the concept of surprise.
- .18____ Considers the expenditure of personnel and equipment to support the deception concept to include secure communications and frequencies.
- .19____ Determines whether there is sufficient time available to formulate coordinate, organize, and execute the deception.
- .20____ Ensures the deception proposal supports and minimizes the vulnerabilities of the operation plan, but is not critical to the overall success of the assigned mission.
- .21____ Considers the involvement and support required from other units, services, and agencies.
- .22____ Gathers sufficient intelligence on the enemy commander(s); e.g., identity, leadership style, strengths and weaknesses, tactical experience, tactical style, sensor network, morale, and staff procedures, to tailor the plan to influence enemy reactions.
- .23____ Determines how long the enemy commander will need to formulate and issue orders, including an estimate of time required by the enemy communications system to move the order from commander to subordinate elements.
- .24____ Ensures deception events are consistent with past and future operations, and avoid the "windfall" (information easily obtained, is information easily discarded) effect.
- .25____ Collects sufficient information to predict the enemy's probable reaction to the overall deception plan and each event.
- .26____ Develops deception events that support the plan, targets those information systems the enemy commander places the greatest reliance on, and allows the enemy enough time to analyze and react in the desired manner.
- .27____ Ensures the story permits verification by various enemy collection systems.
- .28____ Evaluates enemy sensor system to determine which sensors cannot be deceived, and targets them for neutralization through other means; (i.e., jamming, destruction, OPSEC).
- .29____ Determines the availability of means to destroy those sensors, and checks to ensure their neutralization will not interfere with other operations.
- .30____ Evaluates whether the deception can still be effective without the neutralization of the sensors that cannot be deceived.
- .31____ Determines the availability of assets to monitor the feedback of the effectiveness of deception events.
- .32____ Plans for enough flexibility to counter any unexpected enemy reaction.
- .33____ War games the concept to ensure the plan and associated events logically relate to the tactical situation, and all deception events support the deception objective.
- .34____ Includes provisions for special reporting.
- .35____ Coordinates with higher and adjacent units and all agencies which will participate in, or be affected by, the deception execution.
- .36____ Plans phase-out actions to disguise the fact the deception has been used.
- .37____ Gains approval from the MEU commander.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.19 SEA TRANSIT

CONDITION(S): The MEU is in transit to the objective area. Initial planning has been completed and approved.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ War games concept, and if time permits, rehearses, or at a minimum, builds models, sand tables, sketches, et al, for briefing purposes.
- .2____ Utilizes a terrain model, sketch, overlay, or other training aids when briefing the operations plan.
- .3____ Conducts detailed brief on the landing plan to all key individuals to include pilots, coxswains, and combat cargo officers.
- .4____ Ensures all personnel understand the plans and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.
- .5____ Allows opportunity for questions and comments.
- .6____ Isolates, for OPSEC purposes, any selected individuals whose knowledge of forthcoming operations must be protected until completion of the mission.
- .7____ Issues weapons and equipment, and conducts maintenance checks, LTI's, and preoperation checks on required special equipment.
- .8____ Conducts under and individual training drills.
- .9____ Schedules rehearsals and issues a rehearsal schedule.
- .10____ Rehearses debarkation drills.
- .11____ Ensures all personnel have received training on special equipment, weapons, or ordnance issued.
- .12____ Sets BZO on all weapons and calibrates those with night vision devices.
- .13____ Briefs all personnel on rules of engagement.
- .14____ Adheres to EMCON throughout the transit phase.
- .15____ Coordinates with the ATF for COMSEC monitoring, analysis and reporting throughout the transit phase.
- .16____ Ensures procedures are established to pass AEW information to subordinates using information gathered from ATF/CVBG/land based aircraft (E3, E2) data links.
- .17____ Makes adjustment to plans based on intelligence updates, availability of operationally ready assault amphibians, helicopters and landing craft, and disseminates any required changes to subordinate units.
- .18____ Upon arrival in the objective area, MEU commander coordinates with CATF on final decisions. (KI)
- .19____ MEU and Navy representatives in SACC coordinate delivery of fires planned prior to commencement of the assault.
- .20____ MEU reports readiness of the LF to begin the assault.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

FINAL DECISIONS

It is a CATF responsibility to reach a final decision on execution of the primary or alternate plan and to confirm or alter the planned H-hour. These decisions are reached after arrival of the task force in the objective area and in consultation with the MEU commander.

TASK: 7A.1.20 PLAN REHEARSAL

CONDITION(S): The MEU is en route to the objective area. A suitable rehearsal site has been located and time is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Issues a warning order to subordinate elements alerting them to the rehearsal schedule.
- .2____ Develops, in coordination with CATF, a rehearsal plan in adherence to restrictions established on electronic emissions, flight activities, and other actions that might disclose the operation and cause OPSEC violations.
- .3____ Publishes a rehearsal plan which gives the number, nature and scope of rehearsals, date and time for each, area in which they will be conducted, and foul weather plans.
- .4____ Ensures the plan is detailed enough to test the adequacy, timing, combat readiness of units, and communications plan of the intended operation, and recommends to CLF/CATF, those critical or irreplaceable items that should not be used during rehearsal operations.
- .5____ Conducts prerehearsal briefings.
- .6____ Conducts staff rehearsals in the form of a CPX or refresher training for watch standards prior to involving subordinate units.
- .7____ Conducts an integrated rehearsal, which at a minimum effectively evaluates the adequacy of the landing plan, timing of detailed operations, readiness of participating forces, and the communications plan.
- .8____ Verifies the timing of debarkation as well as the timing of other complex evolutions to be conducted during the actual assault.
- .9____ Conducts detailed critiques after each rehearsal.
- .10____ Develops changes to planning documents based on problems noted during the rehearsal, and disseminates these changes to subordinates.
- .11____ Rehearse again if time is available.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.21 REVIEW COMMUNICATIONS PREPARATION

CONDITION(S): The MEU is en route to the objective area. A suitable rehearsal site has been located and time is available. All communications planning is complete.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Conducts briefings on overall Operations/Comm plan, schedule of events, COMSEC plan, et al.
- .2____ Briefs staff on communications plan.
- .3____ Uses graphic aids, maps, charts, need line diagrams, alternate route diagrams, etc., when briefing.
- .4____ Conducts preparatory training required on COMSEC equipment and materials.
- .5____ Conducts preoperations inspections, inventory, and operations checks.
- .6____ Ensures the rehearsal plan fully tests the supportability of the communications plan.
- .7____ Validates the requirement for planned ground or air retransmission sites.
- .8____ Verifies compatibility of COMSEC means and procedures.
- .9____ Conducts operational checks of all LF shipboard circuits during the rehearsal.
- .10____ Tests communications terminating in the SACC/TACC/HDC/LFOC/JIB/TACLOG during the rehearsal.
- .11____ Installs communications based on established priorities.
- .12____ Evaluates communications personnel proficiency during the rehearsal.
- .13____ Conducts correct message drafting briefings.
- .14____ Demonstrates procedures for handling high priority messages.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.22 PREPARE TACTICAL DECEPTION PLAN

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has received a warning order to conduct an amphibious assault. The decision has been made to integrate deception events along with the scheme of maneuver. Due to the urgency of the situation, preparation time is limited.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Makes final coordination for all aspects of the overall deception plan to include communications logistics, command and control.
- .2____ Establishes the same level of OPSEC for the deception plan as for the actual Operations plan.
- .3____ Publishes and distributes the deception plan as either a part of the operation order or as a separate appendix, and includes:
 - 1. Concept Tasks to subordinate units Objectives Phasing schedule Coordinating instructions Communications and operations security.
- .4____ Briefs all elements on the deception plan, events and procedures, and, if time permits, rehearses or at a minimum builds models, prepares a sandtable sketches, etc.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5_____ Affords participants an opportunity to ask questions in order to ensure a thorough understanding.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.23 EXECUTE TACTICAL DECEPTION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has received the order to conduct an amphibious assault. An operations order has been prepared that includes the use of deception. The MEU commander has ordered the execution of the plan prior to, or simultaneously with, the landing.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Ensures training for deception operators is corrected.
- .2_____ Employs the deception story as planned.
- .3_____ MEU controls all aspects of the deception to ensure integration with the actual operations.
- .4_____ Establishes intelligence means and indicators to monitor feedback, and measure enemy reactions to the deception.
- .5_____ Provides all personnel monitoring the action a list of indicators.
- .6_____ All aspects of the deception plan are well coordinated within the force, as well as with CATF.
- .7_____ Friendly forces are able to react to any unanticipated enemy actions which cause portions of the deception plan to be inappropriate.
- .8_____ Uses assets dedicated to the deception effectively.
- .9_____ Executes the planned phase-out actions which are designed to disguise the fact that deception was used.
- .10_____ Deception plan influences enemy decisions and reactions.
- .11_____ Deception plan has a positive influence on the successful execution of the overall tactical operation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Attempt to document all aspects of the operation to facilitate an overall critique on the deception.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.24 ARRIVE IN OBJECTIVE AREA

CONDITION(S): Amphibious task force has arrived in the objective area and has received the order to execute the planned assault landing.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N;

- .1_____ Makes only absolutely necessary alterations to plans based on reevaluated and updated estimates of the situation ashore, and the availability of operationally ready assault amphibians, helicopters, landing craft, and supporting arms.
- .2_____ Coordinates any changes to plans with adjacent, supporting, and higher command elements as well as subordinate units.
- .3_____ LF and ATF representatives in SACC review the schedule of fires planned, the latest intelligence information, readiness information, and any changes to plans prior so initiation of the assault.
- .4_____ Final decisions are made after consultation between the CATF and CLF.
- .5_____ MEU commander reports readiness of the landing force to begin assault.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.25 CONDUCT ASSAULT LANDING

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibian vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are within the quantities anticipated in the final version of the MEU landing plan developed after the rehearsal.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Provides final intelligence update to air and GCE's which emphasize critical information such as the location of antiaircraft defensive positions, antiboat defensive positions, etc.
- .2_____ Adheres to EMCON condition set, removing restrictions on radio emissions only on order.
- .3_____ Maintains close coordination with the CATF in monitoring the assault landing of the various waves.
- .4_____ First wave of helicopters and assault craft land within 30 seconds of the designated time.
- .5_____ Coordinates logistic support for assaulting GCE through representatives in logistics support center (LSC) and ships logistic coordination center (SLCC).
- .6_____ Controls the progress of the landing through issuance of mission type orders as required by the developing situation, and through allocation of support in response to requests from ground and air combat elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.26 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. MEU forces have begun both a surface and heliborne assault. The GCE's FSCC has not yet been established ashore and the SACC is controlling the delivery of fires. The landing and subsequent operations can be at night, during daylight, or during periods of Low visibility. Updated intelligence has been received.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ LF and ATF representatives in the SACC coordinate the delivery of air, NGF preparatory fires, and shift fires as the assault progresses.
- .2____ Transfers coordinating authority ashore to the GCE in increments as soon as units ashore have the capability to control fires.
- .3____ Coordinates the attack of targets in the priorities established in the operations order.
- .4____ Utilizes all the fire support measures necessary in the commander's zone of action.
- .5____ Maintains a detailed plot of friendly positions.
- .6____ Monitors supporting arms to ensure fire is delivered.
- .7____ Recommends the most effective fire support means to engage preplanned targets.
- .8____ Responds quickly to targeting data and immediate fire support requests to assist in coordinating the delivery of fire support and counter expected enemy actions, and recommends intervention in requests for fire only when needed.
- .9____ Resolves conflicts between elements of the landing force on fire support matters.
- .10____ Requests additional fire support from the CATF and supporting forces if required.
- .11____ Maintains reliable ship-to-shore radio communications on the NGF ground spot/COF/JTAR nets.
- .12____ Maintains the capability to monitor requests for fires once the FSCC personnel augmenting the SACC displace ashore, and are prepared to reassume control in the event the FSCC, once established, becomes a casualty.
- .13____ Plans fires in support of future operations in coordination with the S-3.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.27 CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE

CONDITION(S): The GCE of MEU is ashore and is building up combat power. MEU headquarters remains afloat. Air combat element remains afloat. The FSCC, augmented by an austere air control element is ashore and functioning. SACC continues to control fires delivered outside the area of responsibility assigned to the GCE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ MEU commander and his staff maintain close and continuous liaison with CATF and the CATF staff.
- .2____ MEU commander continues to disseminate intelligence updates to units ashore.
- .3____ MEU commander influences maneuver ashore through issuance of mission type orders, assignment of mission objectives, and allocation of resources in response to requests from the GCE.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4_____ MEU commander, through representatives in SACC, continues to monitor the use of firepower ashore and makes known to the CATF any requirements for additional support from outside the assets of the ATF.
- .5_____ MEU commander complies a MEU SITREP that is forwarded to the appropriate fleet commander, via the Navy chain of command with an information copy to the appropriate Fleet Marine Force (FMF) commander.
- .6_____ MEU commander controls logistic support ashore through mission orders given to the CSSE and through allocation of air and surface lift assets to support functions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.28 CONDUCT RPV OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Subordinate elements of the MEU are conducting an amphibious assault with RPV's in support. The landing can be conducted at night, day-time, or during periods of reduced visibility. RPV integration with other supporting arms and manned aircraft has been completed in the planning process. Threat forces have a Direct and indirect fire, aviation, and EW capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Demonstrates the capability to locate a point on the ground to provide observation for an intelligence request.
Time: Controller gives the target location within 10 seconds.
Accuracy: Controller gives a six digit grid within 200 meters of the actual location.
- .2_____ Conducts observation for an adjust fire, fire for effect (FFE) mission on targets of opportunity.
Time: Upon identification of a target, transmits a complete call for fire within 60 seconds; sends subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of round impact.
Accuracy: Target location is given within 200 meters of the actual 50 meters of the target.
Procedures: Correct observed fire and communications procedures are used.
- .3_____ Conducts observation for an immediate smoke and suppression mission.
Time: Upon identification of a target, transmit a complete call for fire within 30 seconds; subsequent corrections are transmitted within 15 seconds of round impact.
Accuracy: Target location is within 300 meters of the actual location. Final suppression rounds are adjusted to within 150 meters of the target in second subsequent correction.
Procedures: Correct observed fire and communications procedures are used.
- .4_____ Requests an immediate air strike on a target of opportunity located by an RPV.
Time: Request for an immediate air strike is transmitted to the FSCC within 1 minute of identification of the target using the standard JTAR format.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.29 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): The MEU is conducting tactical operations. The GCE of the MEU is ashore as well as elements of the CSSE. The MEU command element and ACE are located onboard ATF shipping. Multichannel radio circuits have been established to allow for ship-to-shore telephone (unsecure) communications. The commander, based on the enemy's EN capability, has stressed the use of wire throughout the MEU.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Demonstrates the ability to quickly lay and install wire communications concurrent with the movement of units and the establishment of CP's.
- .2____ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for the back-up system.
- .3____ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities, if available.
- .4____ Installs and maintains telephone system according to established priorities.
- .5____ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .6____ Identifies back-up system capable of restoring essential services, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Back-up systems can be as rudimentary as laying a hot line between two units. The important factor is that commanders had a redundant system, and could still pass information if the primary means failed.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.30 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The MEU is conducting tactical operations. The GCE of the MEU is ashore as well as elements of the CSSE. The MEU command element and ACE are located onboard ATF shipping. The requirement exists to establish communications control at the MEU, ACE, GCE, and CSSE level.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes communication control procedures based on the COMM SOP.
- .2____ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3____ Maintains circuit status.
- .4____ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5____ Provides the necessary communications to allow for continuous command and control.
- .6____ Receives and prepares communications status reports as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.31 EMPLOY ECCM

CONDITION(S): The MEU is conducting tactical operations. The GCE of the MEU is ashore as well as elements of the CSSE. The MEU command element and ACE are located onboard ATF shipping wing. The ebony has an ECM and ESM capability which he has actively employed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Uses terrain masking techniques where practical.
- .2___ Uses only authorized codes.
- .3___ Correctly uses authentication/encryption codes.
- .4___ Radio operators continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness, and send messages by alternate means, if available.
- .5___ Radios are remoted from antennas to the maximum extent practical.
- .6___ Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
- .7___ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
- .8___ Adheres to emission control (EMCON) conditions.
- .9___ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10___ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope of the hill (away from the enemy) when practicable.
- .11___ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12___ Uses daily changing frequencies and consigns on all tactical nets whenever frequency allocations and callsign assignments allow.
- .13___ Reports meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) per formats and procedures designated.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.32 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The MEU is conducting tactical operations. The GCE of the MEU is ashore as well as elements of the CSSE The MEU command element and ACE are located onboard ATF shipping.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2___ Selects and correctly employs proper antennas.
- .3___ Follows correct safety techniques.
- .4___ Follows proper grounding procedures.
- .5___ Follows lost communications procedures.
- .6___ Employs radio retransmission capability as required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7___ Demonstrates effective equipment power source management.
- .8___ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .9___ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment.
- .10___ Possesses equipment record jackets and appropriate TM's.
- .11___ Performs PM's per the applicable TM's.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.33 CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The MEU is conducting tactical operations. The GCE of the MEU is ashore as well elements of the CSSE and ACE. The enemy is known to possess nuclear and chemical warfare capabilities and have demonstrated their intention to employ NBC attacks in the area aimed at destroying/ disrupting operation and facilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; A; NE

- .1___ MEU possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC attacks and reports required.
- .2___ Establishes back-up command, control, and communications procedures to be used under NBC conditions.
- .3___ Receives NBC reports from subordinate MEU elements or higher command elements when NBC attack is considered probable.
- .4___ Alerts all subordinate elements and provides guidance.
- .5___ Provides direction to subordinates concerning Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP), detection, monitor/survey operations, contamination avoidance, and decontamination procedures.
- .6___ Continues to receive reports from subordinate elements.
- .7___ Provides updates to subordinates as they become available.
- .8___ Provides assistance to subordinates in hasty or deliberate decontamination beyond their capabilities.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.1.34 PREPARE FOR COMPOSITING OF THE MEU

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEU are established ashore and have secured the force beachhead line (FBHL). A MEB has been ordered into the AOA to continue the attack. A decision has been made for the deploying MEB to absorb the MEU. The MEU remains afloat. An air control element is collocated with the FSCC. A CVBG is in support of operations. An airfield capable of handling transport and tactical aircraft is located in the AOA. The enemy forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The airfield and the beach support areas are currently outside of enemy artillery range. AFOE is en route, and will arrive within 3 days. Limited planning time is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Bases compositing on available contingency plan, and utilizes the plan's checklist.
- .2___ Reviews phased deployment of forces in the contingency plan, and prepares recommendations based on the current situation as well as anticipated changes.
- .3___ Verifies the plan's, command relationships and the CHOP sequence.
- .4___ Coordinates provisions for the arrival of a MEB advance party to include work spaces, communications facilities, security, etc.
- .5___ Identifies available host nation and/or interservice support, and provides the information to MEB planners immediately.
- .6___ Verifies that the time phased deployment of MEB assets calls for the early arrival of command elements to allow for the early passage of control over ground operations to occur, and to shorten the time required to assume control over air operations.
- .7___ Identifies Liaison personnel for exchange with the MEB advance party.
- .8___ Conducts a site survey of the airfield and facilities, and determines the level of effort required to establish fuel and ammunition storage areas, aircraft parking areas, maintenance areas, etc.
- .9___ Ensures all required coordination, planning, site improvement, etc., is complete to allow the airfield to be certified for the landing of USAF aircraft.
- .10___ Schedules a brief by the MEU, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staffs.
- .11___ Reviews MEB's SOP to ensure the compatibility of equipment and procedures.
- .12___ Develops a intelligence briefing capable of being tailored to meet the peculiar needs of the incoming MEB, GCE, ACE, and CSSE.
- .13___ Prepares recommendations for MEB CP sites, assembly areas, designation of MSR's, etc.
- .14___ Designates the battalion landing team (BLT) FSCC to function as the interim RLT FSCC.
- .15___ Assembles a throughput management team within the CSSE.
- .16___ Task organizes an arrival airfield control group (AACG) to support the MEB's arrival and assembly plan.
- .17___ Coordinates the placement of MEU units to provide both long range and close in security for arriving MEB forces.
- .18___ Coordinates the early placement of DASC, ASRT, EWCT, and AFU personnel and equipment.
- .19___ Makes provisions for the immediate integration of additional LAAD assets.
- .20___ Determines the scheduled arrival of the artillery battalion and assists in developing plans to ensure adequate command and control.
- .21___ Verifies COMSEC software compatibility.
- .22___ Coordinates provisions for the early arrival of follow on resupply and the assignment of priorities to prepare facilities to move, store, and protect those supplies.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .23___ Identifies critical resuppling items and commodities.
- .24___ Promulgates the plan for the integration of the MEU ACE into the MEB ACE assets.
- .25___ Promulgates the plan for the integration of the MEU CSSE into the MEB CSSE.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

7A.2 GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)

TASK: 7A.2.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): A BLT comprises the GCE of the embarked MEU that has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have a direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capability. The BLT is task organized with the normal complement of combat support units. It is anticipated that operations ashore will be of limited duration. The MEU has issued a warning order that includes preliminary landing sites/zones, and the GCE staff and subordinate element leaders have begun their initial planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
- .2___ Develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidelines provided by the MEU end BLT commander.
- .3___ BLT commander issues initial planning guidance to his staff and subordinate element Leaders.
- .4___ Determines intelligence requirements, and requests information and intelligence support which exploits all resources, theater and national.
- .5___ Reviews essential elements of friendly information and recent vulnerability assessments, and initiates immediate measures to reduce OPSEC indicators.
- .6___ Develops, in consonance with the planning guidance and designated physical objectives, proposed courses of action.
- .7___ Prepares estimates of supportability based upon the approved courses of action.
- .8___ Briefs estimates of supportability to the MEU commander.
- .9___ Analyzes and conducts a war game, if time allows, with each course of action against probable enemy actions to see how the battle will progress.
- .10___ Determines what reinforcements are required to accomplish the BLT's mission.
- .11___ Presents recommended courses of action to the MEU, and receives the MEU commander's decision and concept of Operations statement.
- .12___ Forwards for approval by the MEU commander, an initial concept of operations ashore which fully exploits the means available; i.e., helicopter support, supporting arms, and combat service support.
- .13___ Plans the concept of operations and concept of employing available fire support means concurrently.

- .14____ Prepares a written or graphic presentation of the concept of operations ashore in broad outline to include the task organization, and issues the concept as an outline plan, or provides it as input to the MEU plan.
- .15____ Conducts a thorough reexamination and analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and the enemy prior to conducting detailed planning.
- .16____ Coordinates with all elements of the MEU during the development of a detailed scheme of maneuver, fire support plan, and landing plan.
- .17____ Briefs, for CLF's approval, specific landing beaches within the beach head.
- .18____ Participates in a decision brief on proposed drop zone(s) and landing zone(s), when joint airborne or air transported forces are involved in the operation.
- .19____ Conducts a decision brief for CLF, along with the ACE, on processed helicopter land zones(s), and approach and retirement lanes.
- .20____ Coordinates the date and hour of landing during the development of the operations plan with the MEU start.
- .21____ Maintains close and continuous liaison throughout planning with all elements of the MEU.
- .22____ Develops, publishes, and disseminates the operation plan, embarkation plan, landing plan, countermechanized plan, and/or alternate plans if those plans are not incorporated into the MEU plans.
- .23____ Coordinates with the ACE for the development and dissemination of the Helicopter Availability Tables (HAT), Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table (HEALT), Helicopter Wave and Serial Assignment Table (HWSAT), and the Helicopter Landing Diagram.
- .24____ Establishes procedures which provide for the continual review of reinforcement requirements and updating of the troop list.
- .25____ Receives NBC policy guidance from the MEU, and plans procedures for all subordinate elements to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
- .26____ Arranges for staff reconnaissance of the AOA, if the situation permits, or considers requesting "country team" assistance, if available.
- .27____ Uses planning aids such as maps, aerial photos, charts, sandtables, and relief maps during detailed planning.
- .28____ Consolidates en route training plans from elements of the BLT.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The BLT has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The BLT, as part of an embarked MEU, is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have a direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capability.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate upon receipt of the warning order from the MEU. (KI)
- .2____ Prepares and presents an intelligence briefing to the commander and staff, based on available information on the enemy and erect of operations.
- .3____ Coordinates with the MEU S-2 to prepare a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance. (KI)
- .4____ Determines, based on the assigned mission and guidance from the commander, intelligence requirements, basic requirements, EEI's and OIR's.
- .5____ Assigns a priority of effort to satisfy these requirements based on the situation and guidance given.
- .6____ Determines BLT requirements for maps, charts, terrain models, photographs, aerial imagery, and other graphic aids, and initiates actions to obtain them.
- .7____ Uses the procedures contained in the intelligence SOP as the basis for planning and operations.
- .8____ Requests Pre D-day aerial imagery support from MEU.
- .9____ Phrases the commander's EEI's in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts; a positive directive, qualifying questions, and statements directing special attention.
- .10____ Uses the collection plan as a basis for issuing orders to organic collection assets, and requests to higher command elements.
- .11____ Submits EEI's to MEU commander, or through him to higher, adjacent, and supporting commands.
- .12____ Makes early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .13____ Assists higher, adjacent, and supporting commanders in their collection efforts.
- .14____ Submits the orders for the collection of information into the intelligence annex or as fragmentary orders.
- .15____ Monitors the development of the MEU aerial reconnaissance and surveillance plan that includes a sensor surveillance plan, and submits requests in a timely manner.
- .16____ Determines the requirement for additional intelligence collection and analysis assets, and initiates action to obtain them.
- .17____ Manages the collection effort continually to ensure that orders and requests are understood and fulfilled.
- .18____ Establishes in coordination with the S-3, counter reconnaissance measures.
- .19____ Prepares an Intel Annex that defines the manner in which the intelligence operations of the BLT will be conducted.
- .20____ Disseminates effective signs and countersigns to subordinate elements.
- .21____ Ensures the intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the SOP for intelligence.
- .22____ Coordinates the handling of captured personnel, documents, and equipment with the MEU and other staff officers.
- .23____ Coordinates with other MEU staff officers for the implementation of civilian control measures such as checkpoints, identification cards, and curfews.
- .24____ Requests pre D-day ESM support from the MEU.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of this preliminary estimate is to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to formulate basic decisions and to assist him in issuing planning guidance.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Intelligence estimation is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the warning order and continues throughout all phases of the planning process. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with the characteristics of the terrain in the objective area; anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected, for the operation; the location, characteristics, and composition of available beaches; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy force in the objective area; and the (location of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concerned with the accomplishment of the five basic intelligence tasks, which are:

1. Determination of requirements (continuous process).
2. Preparation of collection plans.
3. Processing and dissemination techniques.
4. Collection of confirmation information.
5. Dissemination of updated intelligence information.

The intelligence estimate is normally written if planning time allows. The subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice and are normally based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. These changes are incorporated into the basic continuing estimate as soon as possible.

TASK: 7A.2.3 PLAN FOR INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION

CONDITION(S): The BLT is in receipt of the warning order and has begun planning. The ATF is en route to the AOA. A CVBG is also en route. The MEU is developing a collection plan concurrently.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Develops a dynamic collection plan for organic assets that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, and reflects the status of the collection effort.
- .2___ Utilizes an intelligence collection work sheet or other systematic method to manage the collection effort.
- .3___ Ensures a manageable and complete means of coordinating the collection effort which relates requirements to indications, indications to specific information sought, and particular information tasks to collection agencies.
- .4___ Identifies reporting instructions; i.e., time constraints and to whom to report.
- .5___ Coordinates with collection agencies; (i.e., recon/STA platoon) in the preparation of tasking assignments to obtain advice on the feasibility of tasks and to provide for maximum lead time.
- .6___ Utilizes all organic collection assets as well as requests collection support from special intelligence operations, special reconnaissance units, and unconventional warfare forces available to the MEU.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.4 PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The BLT has published a collection plan and has begun to receive reports from the tasked elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison, and identifies any information shortfall from the original EEI's requested.
- .2____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .3____ Analyzes information to isolate significant elements with respect to the mission and operations of the command.
- .4____ Integrates the collected information with other information to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities which might influence the missions of the command.
- .5____ Interprets information to determine significance, and forms logical conclusions which can serve as the basis for determining the effects on the current intelligence estimate.
- .6____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .7____ Determines form of presentation and selects the means of transmission.
- .8____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent intelligence support to all elements of the BLT.
- .9____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the CATF target list.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.5 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The BLT has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established a SACC. The BLT's FSCC will coordinate fires once established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Begins initial planning upon receipt of the warning order utilizing the factors of METT-T.
- .2____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to the S-2 requesting intelligence/combat information on the area of operations, enemy, and weather.
(See Task: 7A.2.2 DIRECTION OF INTELLIGENCE EFFORT.)
- .3____ Advises the BLT commander on how best to use available fire support assets, and maintains constant coordination with the S-2/3.
- .4____ Prepares the fire support estimate of supportability.

- .5_____ Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver and/or plan of defense, effectively integrating fire support into the plan.
- .6_____ Recommends priorities of fires, the allocation of assets, establishment of artillery ashore weapons constraints to provide for future operations, and guidance on the attack of specific targets.
- .7_____ Recommends the allocation of available fire support to support maneuver elements, counterfire, interdiction, and SEAD fires.
- .8_____ Identifies any ammunition and target restrictions, ROE restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of artillery, NGF, and air support.
- .9_____ Recommends assignment of priority of fires for each supporting arm.
- .10_____ Considers the effect of emergency defense of the ATF requirements on aircraft, NGF, and air defense assets.
- .11_____ Provides advice on the desired effects on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available; i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy.
- .12_____ Determines the NGF capabilities of the ships assigned to support the GCE; i.e., draft, number of turrets, Hi e control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
- .13_____ Analyzes the targets to determine how much of what type ordnance is required to destroy, neutralize, or suppress them.
- .14_____ Develops NGF, air, and artillery estimates of fire support requirements.
- .15_____ Consolidates overall BLT requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
- .16_____ Submits a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
- .17_____ Submits overall BLT requirements for air, NGF, and artillery to the MEU in a timely manner.
- .18_____ Coordinates the recommended assignment of NGF missions; i.e., DS or GS.
- .19_____ Makes adjustments to preliminary plans in the event that a shortfall of fire support means cannot be supported from either organic or outside assets.
- .20_____ Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace to include authority to change the priority and instructions for conflict resolution.
- .21_____ Plans SEAD fires when air requests are made for targets in the vicinity of known or suspected SAM or AAA defenses.
- .22_____ Consolidates and integrates subordinate elements' fire support plans into the BLT's plan.
- .23_____ Coordinates the schedule of landing beach preparation fires to include procedures for adjusting the delivery of NGF in relation to the movement of assault craft and the determination of safety limits.
- .24_____ Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
- .25_____ Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the BLT commander for approval.
- .26_____ Publishes the BLT fire support plan as separate supporting appendixes (air, artillery, NGF) to the operations annex of the operations order.
- .27_____ Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as the zones of action, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, areas for neutralization fires, and targets designated for destruction.
- .28_____ Considers logistics needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .29_____ Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and undated intelligence on the threat.
- .30_____ Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT

This concept provides guidance in the following areas:

1. General targets or areas which are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver or be prepared to deliver fires.
2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation.
3. Exclusive or exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or accomplishing a particular task.
4. Whether or not a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires.
5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).
6. For artillery, in general terms, the time and place of landing.

TASK: 7A.2.6 COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The BLT has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established a SACC. The BLT's FSCC will coordinate fires when established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Ensures the FSCC is staffed and equipped by representatives from each fire support asset in support of the BLT.
- .2_____ Each liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
- .3_____ Plans for collocating air control personnel augmenting the MEU in the FSCC when established ashore.
- .4_____ Ensures a LAAD representative is located in the FSCC.
- .5_____ Establishes methods to disseminate, in a timely and continuous manner, that information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
- .6_____ Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
- .7_____ Assigns fire support personnel to accompany the advance force to include observation requirements.

- .8____ Coordinates with the ACE to identify and disseminate armament codes to be used.
- .9____ Ensures procedures are in place to alert units to changing weather conditions as information is acquired from the MEU/CATF.
- .10____ Monitors the concurrent development of air and NGF plans by the SACC, and the targeting process.
- .11____ Establishes procedures to ensure requests for preplanned air and NGF are radar through the appropriate channels in a timely manner, recorded and staffed to avoid duplication, and examined to ensure proper weapons selection.
- .12____ Coordinates procedures to ensure the timely receipt of the daily ATO.
- .13____ Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
- .14____ Maintains the status of all available fire support assets.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.7 IMPLEMENT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the to be attacked by air and NGF, and Car established a SACC. The BLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Joint coordination measures are required to effectively maximize the support available to the landing force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Recommends and implements permissive and restrictive fire support coordination measures, and those designated maneuver control measures which best facilitate maneuver actions and provide safeguards to protect friendly units.
- .2____ Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets, firing positions for artillery, and fire support areas for NGF ships.
- .3____ Coordinates the GCE recommendations to the MEU for establishment of a fire support coordination line (FSCL) for each day.
- .4____ Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in those cases of smoke, illumination, and/or frag patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
- .5____ Coordinates the attack of targets in which the effects extend beyond unit boundaries.
- .6____ Coordinates with the MEU FSC to clear the attack of targets located outside the BLT boundaries or within the constraints imposed by other FSC measures.
- .7____ Maintains and disseminates a list of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war.
- .8____ Plans airspace coordination with aviation planners and implements procedures for exchanges of the minimum required firing information; i.e., from/to coordinates, time schedule (from/to), and attitude.
- .9____ Establish ACA if required.
- .10____ Prepares coordinating instructions for the coordination and control of supporting arms.
- .11____ Provides input to the ACE for the preparation of a pilot/controllers handbook.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-42

- .12____ Coordinates with other fire support agencies to acquire tentative clearances, as required.
- .13____ Uses various aids to help in FS planning and coordination; e.g., fire support responsibilities matrix, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, other support plans.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.8 INTEGRATE TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established a SACC. The BLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Coordination with the S-2/3 is continuous.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Exploits all targeting assets available to the GCE and requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the MEU as well as theater assets.
- .2____ Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the collection effort.
- .3____ Integrates lists of targets from subordinate units and augments these targets with others whose destruction or neutralization is considered vital to the BLT. (KI)
- .4____ Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage or casualties.
- .5____ Establishes targeting procedures that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares nominations for the ATF target list and forwards them to the MEU.
- .6____ Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
- .7____ Records target data on target cards, overlays, and other records.
- .8____ Coordinates inputs to a common target designation system which will be published by the MEU/ATF.
- .9____ Utilizes a target precedence list or the target value analysis (TVA) methodology including TVA spreadsheets and target sheets.
- .10____ Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modification to the target list to include changes in the fire support means requested.
- .11____ Considers close and deep targets.
- .12____ Develops programs of targets for counterfire, countermechanized, and SEAD fires.
- .13____ Coordinates procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information with the S-2.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TARGET PRIORITIES

Generally targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission. Specifically, priorities are given those targets that can:

1. Prevent the execution of the plan - Priority 1.
 2. Seriously interfere with the plan - Priority 2.
 3. Cause serious interference later - Priority 3.
 4. Cause limited interference - Priority 4.
-

TASK: 7A.2.9 PLANS FOR Employment OF FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established a SACC. The BLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Intelligence information has been acquired, and prioritized lists of targets have been forwarded.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Makes recommendations for the landing of artillery Early in the assault if appropriate to the tactical situation.
- .2___ Makes recommendations for the operational employment Ant of RPV's for reconnaissance, target acquisition, and damage assessments in coordination with the S-2/3.
- .3___ Ensures planned artillery positions support to scheme of maneuver.
- .4___ Submits recommendations for the establishment of FSS's, FSA's, and zones of fire for NGF support ships.
- .5___ Integrates the plan for the delivery of NFG with helicopter approach lanes and fixed-wing routes into, and out of, the AOA.
- .6___ Recommends allocation of FPF's.
- .7___ Ensures adequate artillery ammunition is available and allocated to provide adequate support.
- .8___ Integrates the fire support plan with the antimechanizing plan.
- .9___ Determines the requirement to register any fire support assets, and makes recommendations to the GCE.
- .10___ Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams equipped with laser designators.
- .11___ Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priorities.
- .12___ Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
- .13___ Provides schedules of fire support requested to subordinate elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.10 INITIATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Reviews communications SOP, operations order/plan, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .2____ Participates in the MEU's communications coordination conference to identify LF communications requirements, and to obtain technical and administrative instructions.
- .3____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability for each course of action considered by the GCE.
- .4____ Requests message distribution per the procedures contained in the communications SOP.
- .5____ Configures the communications system to allow for systems control and technical control.
- .6____ Plans for communications redundancy and identifies alternate means of communications.
- .7____ Coordinates the employment of various types of radios to ensure reliable communications by providing multiple communications paths, and divergent portions of the frequency spectrum.
- .8____ Based on MEU commander's guidance, coordinates the use and allocation of COMSEC equipment and materials.
- .9____ Plans for the establishment of communications with outside agencies as directed.
- .10____ Conducts liaison with MEU/ATF communications planners.
- .11____ Submits the GCE prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements to the MEU and/or embarked ship's communications officer.
- .12____ Coordinates the use and location of deck mounted radios with the MEU/ATF CEO.
- .13____ Coordinates communications requirements to support the rehearsal plan.
- .14____ Requests frequencies for operations, rehearsal, COMMEX, and/or CPX.
- .15____ Identifies interoperability problems with ATF and theater assets.
- .16____ Develops the CEOI using procedures contained in the communications SOP, and directives from the MEU.
- .17____ Coordinates with subordinate units to ensure required connectivity is planned.
- .18____ Coordinates the preparation of the ASC-26 with the ACE for the GCE's use.
- .19____ Determines SATCOM requirements, and requests access.
- .20____ Publishes and disseminates the Comm plan in a timely manner.
- .21____ Determines/requests HF frequency propagation for all operating areas.
- .22____ Requests any known geographic and climatic communications limitations.
- .23____ Develops communications contingency plan.

- .24____ Develops a COMSEC plan and coordinates with MEU CEO to monitor COMSEC, providing friendly CEOI information such as the identification of key nets, times of changing callsigns, frequencies, crypts, etc.
- .25____ Ensures communications discipline measures are adhered to during planning, and all subsequent phases of the operation.
- .26____ Plans manual and ground retransmission sites as well as aerial retransmission, using both organic and theater aircraft, if required.
- .27____ Ensures the communications plan reflects secure voice equipment, correct key lists, and edition numbers, and verifies that subordinates possess them.
- .28____ Plans for the use of field expedient radio antennas.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.11 INITIATE SECURITY PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The BLT has been tasked to conduct an amphibious assault. There is a potential threat from aircraft, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a limited night capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
- .2____ Ensures unit commanders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
- .3____ Ensures the proposed rules of engagement provide for the security of friendly forces.
- .4____ Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, the use of barriers, and obstacles.
- .5____ Uses field expedient protective measures against enemy lasers; i.e., concealment, observation techniques, smoke, protective cover, limiting the number of Marines observing, use of NVG's, thermal night sights.
- .6____ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and oncall.
- .8____ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and air defense coverage.
- .9____ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for all forces.
- .10____ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, OP's, LP's, and other local security techniques.
- .11____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
- .12____ Plans for the positioning of LAAD units in depth within the objective area.
- .13____ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures for their notification and transportation.
- .14____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .15____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units; e.g ,TRAP, mass casualties, etc.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.12 INITIATE CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The BLT has been tasked to conduct an amphibious assault, and is conducting all aspects of planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent CSS requirements.
- .2____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .3____ Prepares, in coordination with the CSSE, the CSS estimates of supportability.
- .4____ Establishes coordination with MEU staff and agencies involved with CSS operations.
- .5____ Coordinates with the S-3 in the analysis of the proposed courses of action to determine the type units and rough numbers of troops who will be committed ashore, commanders priorities for support, requirements for supplies, CSS, equipment densities, distances involved, and the anticipated duration of the operation.
- .6____ Reviews anticipated requirements with the CSSE, to ensure the organic capability of the CSSE to provide the required logistical support.
- .7____ Studies the S-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information on the area to determine climate, weather, terrain, population considerations, existing facilities, in-country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc.
- .8____ Determines and computes, in coordination with the MEU S-4/CSSE commander, overall logistics requirements for each phase of the type operation being planned.
- .9____ Determines, in coordination with the MEU S-4/CSSE, the types and quantities of supplies to be carrier' ashore by units as prescribed loads, as well as the types and quantities required for pre-staged helicopter lifted supplies and follow-on unloading.
- .10____ Establishes, in coordination with the MEU S-3, ACE, and CSSE, a TACLOG for the ship-to-shore movement.
- .11____ Coordinates with the MEU S-4 and CSSE on a plan for the development of logistics support ashore.
- .12____ Coordinates with the MEU and CSSE commander in determining the type resupply system to be used i.e., push/pull, supply points, etc.
- .13____ Determines, in coordination with the MEU staff/LF surgeon and the CSSE, medical support for the evacuation of casualties.
- .14____ Determines, in coordination with the MEU S-4 and the CSSE, transportation support for the evacuation of casualties.
- .15____ Reviews quantities, types of equipment and supplies computed by the CSSE that are required for each successive stage of the operation, including their assigned priorities of issue.
- .16____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop the logistics plan.
- .17____ Considers, in coordination with the CSSE, crossdecking requirements to support the concept.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .18____ Reviews the concept of CSS, proposed by the CSSE, and requests any changes required.
- .19____ Allocates supplies to each echelon of the RLT, making each unit self sufficient until it can be resupplied.
- .20____ Prepares, in coordination with the MEU S-4/CSSE, appropriate annexes to the operations order.
- .21____ Receives legal and claims procedures from the MEU for inclusion in the operations order/plan.
- .22____ Reviews the MEU's plan for- the development of logistic support ashore.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal.

KEY INDICATOR: None.

TASK: 7A.2.13 DEVELOP THE LANDING PLAN

CONDITION(S): The BLT is in receipt of the MEU concept of operations and has developed a scheme of maneuver ashore which has been approved. Organic helicopter and AAV assets are available within the MEU. The landing can occur during daylight, night time, or periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Determines BLT requirements for the ship-to-shore movement and confirms available organic ship-to-shore assets.
- .2____ A Locates assets for use by subordinate elements, ensuring the allocation provides for the maximum rapport of the initial tactical operations ashore.
- .3____ Develops a landing plan that is totally integrated with the scheme of maneuver ashore and the fire support plan.
- .4____ Plans for flexibility in the landing of supporting arms, and reserve elements.
- .5____ Considers enemy capabilities to countersurface and/or air assaults.
- .6____ Assigns elements one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .7____ Coordinates the employment' of navigation aids (NAVAIDS) to mark landing sites; e.g., GAIL lights, chemical lights, panels, et al, for both surface and helicopterborne assaults.
- .8____ Completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning or crossdecking to occur.
- .9____ Publishes the landing plan as an appendix to the amphibious operations annex to the Operations Order, or submits input for consolidation into a single MEU plan.
- .10____ Develops alternate plans to cover foul weather interference and/or changes in enemy capabilities.
- .11____ Assigns adequate personnel to the TACLOG to advise MEU and Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, and supplies.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.14 EXECUTE ASSAULT LANDING

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MEU landing plan developed after the final rehearsal.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Inserts the terminal guidance teams without compromise.
- .2___ Receives reports from the reconnaissance teams inserted prior to H-hour on the enemy situation, LZ briefs, and on their ability to provide ITG support.
- .3___ Provides final intelligence update to combat elements which emphasize critical aspects of the landing, such as the location of antiaircraft and antiboat defensive positions.
- .4___ Conducts a ZIPPO brief prior to the helicopterborne assault.
- .5___ Ensures naval control agencies are conducting the movement according to the schedule contained in the landing plan.
- .6___ Monitors the surfaceborne and helicopterborne movements of units, providing status updates to the MEU commander, as required.
- .7___ Lands first wave of helicopters and assault craft within 30 seconds of the designated time.
- .8___ Adheres to EMCON condition set by the MEU, removing restrictions on radio emissions only on order.
- .9___ Advises MEU and Navy representatives in the SACC to coordinate delivery of air and NGF preparatory fires and shifting of fires as the assault progresses.
- .10___ Employs a SAC(A) to control fire support during the landing.
- .11___ Employs NGF to suppress and neutralize targets.
- .12___ Demonstrates effective counterbattery fires.
- .13___ Considers using smoke to screen the movement ashore, and if used, does so effectively.
- .14___ AAV's effectively employ smoke to provide self protection, if required.
- .15___ Demonstrates the ability to breach beach obstacles and minefields during the initial phase of the landing.
- .16___ Demonstrates the ability to reduce fortifications by both indirect and direct fires.
- .17___ Uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
- .18___ Demonstrates effective terminal aircraft control by FAC teams to include RABFAC beacon missions.
- .19___ Demonstrates effective indirect fire control through FO's, ground spotters, and reconnaissance teams.
- .20___ Utilizes CIFS assets effectively to support the movement of transport helicopters and ground units.
- .21___ Controls the progress of the landing through issuance of mission type orders as required by the developing situation and through allocation of support in response to requests from subordinate elements.
- .22___ Maintains the momentum of the attack by the effective use of bases of fire, aggressive small unit leadership, fire, and fire and movement.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .23____ Coordinates the link-up of forces, demonstrating positive communications and fire support coordination.
- .24____ Positions antitank weapons on the flanks and overmatch positions.
- .25____ Maintains reliable communications.
- .26____ Establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
- .27____ Coordinates logistic support for assaulting GCE through representation in LSC and SLCC.
- .28____ Maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach and in the LZ's.
- .29____ Demonstrates knowledgeable treatment of casualties by individual Marines and corpsmen.
- .30____ Coordinates the evacuation of casualties, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.15 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION ASHORE

CONDITION(S): Elements of the GCE have conducted both a surface and heliborne assault. The GCE's FSCC has established itself ashore and is preparing to assume control. The SACC is controlling the delivery of fires ashore initially.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Maintains current status on the tactical situation, fire support coordination measures in effect, a list of fires to be coordinated, the location of artillery ashore, and NGF ships available.
- .2____ Establishes reliable communications with both subordinate elements and fire support agencies within 30 minutes after arrival on the beach.
- .3____ Requests transfer of responsibility for overall coordination of supporting fires after communications are established, and phasing control checklists are completed.
- .4____ Assumes responsibility for the overall coordination of air, NGF, and artillery.
- .5____ Clears requests for fire support based on "silence is consent" or unit policy in less than 60 seconds.
- .6____ Coordinates the attack of targets in the priority established in the operations order, or by the commander's changes based on the tactical situation.
- .7____ Utilizes all the fire support measures in the commander's zone of action.
- .8____ Manages the flow of information in the FSCC so that critical information is exchanged in a timely manner.
- .9____ Displays essential information on status boards, maps, and overlays, and ensures their timely update.
- .10____ Maintains a detailed plot of all friendly positions, activities, particularly the location of lead elements, civilian population concentrations, and places protected by the law of war.
- .11____ Coordinates the link up of the supporting arms means with the appropriate fire support team, FAC, NGF spotter, and FO.
- .12____ Clears all missions with adjacent units that have fires impacting in, passing through, or affecting their zone; i.e., smoke and illumination.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-50

- .13___ Monitors the execution of fire missions and air strikes to ensure the requested support is delivered.
- .14___ Selects One most effective/appropriate fire support means to engage preplanned targets.
- .15___ Receives and plots firing data; i.e., location (from/to), time (from/to), and altitude from the firing unit in order to promulgate information to ensure mutual use of airspace.
- .16___ Maintains an overlay of aircraft control points.
- .17___ Disseminates ACA's, as required, in a timely manner.
- .18___ Demonstrates the ability to coordinate the simultaneous use of different supporting arms by coordinating an air strike and SEAD fires.
- .19___ Adjusts the schedule of fires based on the advance of maneuver units and any changes to the scheme of maneuver.
- .20___ Responds quickly to targeting data and immediate fire support requests to coordinate the delivery of fire support on high priority targets.
- .21___ Resolves fire support conflicts between elements of the landing force as well as conflicts between direct air support missions and indirect fire missions.
- .22___ Establishes communications with the artillery, reconnaissance and MEU commander immediately upon their landing in order to coordinate changes to the fire support plan, as required.
- .23___ Maintains the location of all artillery elements and their firing capabilities.
- .24___ Monitors the mortar net and adheres to the "silence is consent" rule unless the tactical situation dictates otherwise.
- .25___ Coordinates the movement of the mortar platoon or any of its sections.
- .26___ Maintains the status of remaining air sorties allotted, aircraft on-call, and status of all preplanned air missions for the next 24 hours.
- .27___ Requests additional fire support from the MEU and supporting forces, if required.
- .28___ Coordinates the movement of direct support ship(s) with the MEU/ATF.
- .29___ Monitors the NGF spot nets, relaying requests for fire, if required, and adheres to the "silence is consent" rule unless the tactical situation dictates otherwise.
- .30___ Maintains reliable ship-to-shore radio communications on all doctrinally assigned ship-to-shore nets.
- .31___ Maintains information on ship's ammunition status and rotation schedule.
- .32___ Utilizes the air control personnel to aid in the quick response of aircraft to changes in the tactical situation.
- .33___ Ensures counter battery and counter mortar fire is available, ready, and on-call.
- .34___ Cancels missions if they are no longer required; e.g., target has moved, or if previously granted clearance is canceled.
- .35___ Maintains ammunition status information on all artillery and mortar elements.
- .36___ Identifies shortages of any type of ammunition which could affect operations.
- .37___ Determines if any temporary fire support coordination measures are required, and cancels those no longer required.
- .38___ Plans fire and aircraft missions in support of future operations and contingency plans in coordination with the S-3.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .39____ Recommends changes to the fire support coordination line based on changes to the tactical situation.
- .40____ Maintains a record of targets fired on, BDA assessed, targets not engaged, and informs the S-2/3 and the MEU commander.
- .41____ Monitors the Joint Tactical Air Request (JTAR) net for information or clearance, if rendered, on requests for immediate air support.
- .42____ Designates priority targets for immediate suppression missions, and updates these targets as the situation changes.
- .43____ Determines whether SEAD fires are required based on input from the S-2 and other intelligence sources, and the amount required.
- .44____ Coordinates the artillery requirement for displacement, time, routes, and distribution with the BLT commander.
- .45____ Maintains an FSCC journal.
- .46____ Demonstrates the ability to displace the FSCC by echelon without a loss of control or degradation of support.
- .47____ Establishes reliable communications with the operational system control center (SYSCON) to coordinate communications restoration priorities.
- .48____ Utilizes liaison personnel located in the FSCC effectively.
- .49____ Provides continuous updates on the current situation to the fire support units.
- .50____ Utilizes a fire support matrix to manage the execution of the fire support plan.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.16 OPERATE A COMMAND POST

CONDITION(S): The BLT is conducting tactical operations. Planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the BLT to displace the command post frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of LVTC-A1's. The enemy has a long range reconnaissance capability in addition to direct and indirect fire, and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N NE

- .1____ Organizes and operates the command post per prescribed procedures contained in the unit SOP.
- .2____ Staffs the command post with the executive staff, necessary special staff officers, liaison personnel from attached, adjacent and supporting units, and supporting personnel.
- .3____ Organizes personnel, equipment, and vehicles to operate on a 24-hour-a-day basis.
- .4____ Bases the location of the command post on troop dispositions, routes of communications, communication requirements, type of tactical operations, space required, cover and concealment, and security, etc., i.e., the command post is located well forward in the attack to avoid the requirement for an early displacement and to the rear of the defensive area to avoid a hasty displacement in the event of an enemy penetration.
- .5____ Identifies alternate locations in the event the command post must be displaced rapidly.
- .6____ Prepares plans for the establishment of alternate command posts per procedures contained in the unit SOP; e.g., seniority list of officers, designation of one of the companies, etc.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7___ Conducts, at a minimum, one displacement of the command post at night.
- .8___ Employs deceptive measures when planning, preparing and conducting a command post displacement.
- .9___ Employs both active and passive security measures; e.g., use of local security patrols, natural cover and concealment, supplementary camouflage, etc.
- .10___ Demonstrates the ability to react to a small unit attack.
- .11___ Restricts movement and access to the command post. (KI)
- .12___ Grounds barbed wire placed around the COC and other facilities containing communications equipment to shunt induced voltages to ground to greatly reduce electromagnetic interference (EMI). (KI)
- .13___ Locates generators as far away as possible from antennas.
- .14___ Remotes antennas away from command post facilities to counter enemy direction finding (DF) efforts.
- .15___ Uses RG-58 coaxial cable or comparable cable vice WD-1 slash wire on those critical nets where the antennas are remoted from the command post to reduce signal loss through the transmission feed line.
- .16___ Radios and other electronic equipment are properly grounded to reduce susceptibility to noise generating sources.
- .17___ Message handling procedures provide for message accountability, quick distribution, and are per the unit SOP.
- .18___ Disperses facilities, vehicles and equipment, and time permitting digs in and reinforces positions.
- .19___ Locates dismount points, message drops, and pick-up points, within defended areas.
- .20___ Locates bivouac areas and helicopter LZ's to add depth to local security forces.
- .21___ Positions supply and medical facilities in close proximity to the command post.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESTRICTION AND ACCESS CONTROL PROCEDURES

Entry and exit procedures to the command post area are rigidly enforced. A system which allows thorough screening and protections of U.S. personnel and equipment is instituted. This system is three-tiered at a minimum. The first tier consists of signs which controls admittance and posts the rates of speed for vehicles approaching the checkpoint. The second tier, the trigger position, is where searches are conducted as well as identification is checked. The third tier is where weapons capable of destroying incoming vehicles are located; e.g., TOW, dragon, SMAW, and AT-4. Special orders for each post are established. The last tier, however, has the well defined mission to destroy, immediately, any vehicle passing the checkpoint without proper authorization.

COMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING

The employment of barbed wire around various facilities within the command post can seriously degrade communications unless the barbed wire is properly grounded. Grounding of the wire is accomplished by placing a metal stake in the ground approximately 2 to 3 feet deep. At a minimum, one stake is driven into fine ground at the closest point to the location of the antennas. Prior to driving the stakes into the ground the soil should be wet and have salt added (salt from MRE's will work). WD-1 slash wire or RG-58 coaxial should cross the barbed wire at the site of the stake. The communication wire is buried below the barbed wire or raised above it, (at least 3 feet in either case) and passes across the barbed wire at a sight angle (90 degrees). Following these procedures will greatly reduce EMI.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 7A.2.17 CONTROL OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The BLT is established ashore and is building up combat power. MEU headquarters remains afloat. The FSCC, augmented by air control personnel, is ashore and functioning. Planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the BLT to displace the battalion command post frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of LVTC-A1's. The enemy has a long range reconnaissance capability in addition to direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Maintains close and continuous liaison with the MEU and the subordinate units.
- .2___ Maintains friendly and enemy status maps, over charts, etc., required by the unit SOP in an up-to-date manner.
- .3___ Locates principal staff sections to facilitate staff functioning.
- .4___ Controls the maneuver ashore by issuing mission type orders, assignment of mission objectives, and allocation of resources in response to requests from subordinates.
- .5___ Issues fragmentary orders (FRAGO's) in a timely manner in order to maintain the momentum of the attack and exploit successes on the battlefield.
- .6___ Disseminates intelligence data and other critical information to subordinates immediately after processing.
- .7___ Maintains positive and reliable communications with both higher and subordinate commands.
- .8___ Demonstrates the ability to form E command group to operate a forward command group per the procedures in the SOP.
- .9___ Demonstrates the ability to operate the combat operations center from an LVTC-7A1 during the day and night, to include at a minimum one displacement.
- .10___ Sufficient communications means are available to permit operations to be controlled on the move and/or at two separate locations such as during displacement.
- .11___ Passes command forward only after the new command post is capable of assuming control, and notifies higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate units.
- .12___ Displaces the command post without losing control and without interrupting the progress of the attack, or support to subordinates.
- .13___ Demonstrates the ability to use other communication paths or means to pass critical message traffic when the primary path or means fails.
- .14___ Maintains covered communications on those nets so designated in the CEOI.
- .15___ Demonstrates the ability to monitor the progress of the battle, shift the priority of fires, and request reinforcing fires and support as the situation dictates.
- .16___ Subordinates submit combat reports in a timely manner.
- .17___ Compile information from subordinates and activities to prepare SITREPS and other required report.
- .18___ Reports essential items only.
- .19___ Coordinates the logistic support for all elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.18 COORDINATE INTERNAL ORGANIZATION OF THE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER

CONDITION(S): The BLT is conducting tactical operations. A combat operations center (COC) has been established. However, planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the BLT to displace frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of LVTC-A1's.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Maintains friendly and enemy status maps, overlays, charts, etc., required by the unit SOP in an up-to-date manner.
- .2____ Internal arrangement of the COC allows for the integration of operation, intelligence, and fire support.
- .3____ Manages information within the COC to ensure the required action is taken in a timely, coordinated, and thorough manner, and that an audit trail is maintained.
- .4____ Conducts a detailed brief for oncoming match standard prior to relief.
- .5____ Employs a method which alerts personnel on watch to changes in the status of communications.
- .6____ Message handling procedures provide for message accountability, quick distribution, and are in accordance with the SOP.
- .7____ Demonstrates the ability to use other communication paths or means to pass critical message traffic when the primary path or means fails.
- .8____ SOP contains provisions for the emergency destruction of classified material.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2.19 CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE

CONDITION(S): The BLT is ashore and is building up combat power. MEU headquarters remains afloat. The FSCC, augmented by air control personnel, is ashore and functioning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Maintain close and continuous liaison with the MEU and the subordinate elements.
- .2____ Maintains an accurate plot of all friendly units and activities.
- .3____ Issues FRAGO's in a timely manner in order to maintain the momentum of the attack and exploit successes on the battlefield.
- .4____ Disseminates intelligence data and other critical information to higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements immediately after processing.
- .5____ Controls the maneuver ashore by issuing mission-type orders, assignment of mission objectives, and allocation of resources in response to requests from subordinates.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6____ Maintains positive and reliable communications with both higher and subordinate commands.
- .7____ Displaces the command post without losing control and without interrupting the progress of the attack, or support to subordinates.
- .8____ Maintains covered communications on those nets so designated in the CEOI.
- .9____ Maintains the progress of the battle, shifts the priority of fires, and requests reinforcing fires and support as the situation dictates.
- .10____ Manages information within the COC to ensure the required action is taken in a timely, coordinated, and thorough manner, and that a audit trail is maintained.
- .11____ Develops an antimech plan and other contingency plans based on procedures contained in the operations SOP.
- .12____ Compiles information from the required subordinates and activities to prepare SITREPS and other required reports. Limits reports to essential items only.
- .13____ Coordinates the logistic support for all elements.
- .14____ Subordinates submit combat reports in a timely manner.
- .15____ Ensures both indirect and direct fire support assets are displaced forward to provide responsive and accurate delivery of fires.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.2 20 CONTROL WITHDRAWAL SEAWARD

CONDITION(S): The BLT has received the order to withdraw and return aboard ATF shipping. The withdrawal is administrative; however, the security of forces as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment must be emphasized.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Acknowledges MEU order for withdrawal.
- .2____ Establishes priorities for movement of personnel, supplies, equipment, and materiel seaward.
- .3____ Coordinates fire planning to ensure coverage of all phases of the withdrawal.
- .4____ Promulgates guidance on personnel accountability and instructions for escape and evasion by any Marines inadvertently left behind during withdrawal.
- .5____ Ensures rear guard security is planned throughout the withdrawal.
- .6____ Issues operation order for execution of the withdrawal.
- .7____ Facilitates the rearward movement of units through the use of control measures.
- .8____ Provides update status reports and a final report on completion of amphibious withdrawal to the MEU after accounting for all Marines who were deployed ashore.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATORS INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WITHDRAWAL OPERATION ORDER

MUST PROVIDE:

1. Detailed missions for subordinate elements of MEU.
 2. Sequence of withdrawal.
 3. Fire suit plan for coverage of withdrawal.
 4. Designation of embarkation beaches.
 5. Detailed instructions for embarkation.
 6. Specific instruction on loading, combat, or administrative.
(If in doubt, combat load.)
 7. Designation of control agency on embarkation beaches.
 8. Schedule for movement to beaches.
 9. Detailed personnel accountability instructions.
-

7A.3 AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)

TASK: 7A.3.1 INITIATE STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU is in receipt of an initiating directive and has begun planning for an amphibious landing. The embarked ACE is comprised of a composite helicopter squadron, an AV-8 element, a LAAD element, and an air command and control element. The composite helicopter commander is the senior aviator and is also assigned as the ACE commander. Using his original staff, augmented by representatives from the attached elements, he directs the initiation of planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Task organizes an ACE staff for the planning, integration, and control of all organic aviation support provided to the MEU.
- .2____ Receives MEU commander's planning guidance.
- .3____ Requests EEI's from the S-2 to include: enemy detection and reaction capabilities; type and location of antiaircraft weapons; force concentrations; enemy ECM and ECCM capabilities; enemy aircraft; weather conditions in the AOR; terrain and LZ conditions; and safe areas. Passes information down to the subordinate aircraft and control personnel. (See Task: 7A.3.2 INTELLIGENCE PLANNING.)
- .4____ Establishes Early liaison with ATF aviation planners and control agencies.
- .5____ Completes an initial estimate of the MEU aviation requirements.
- .6____ Provides advice to the GCE/CSSE representatives during the formulation of the aviation requirements which includes calculations for troop lifts, preplanned CAS, air interdiction targets, aerial reconnaissance, air defense assets, illumination, C&C flights, and logistic support needs. (KI)

- .7____ Prepares aviation estimates of supportability for all operations signed, and identifies any limitations or problem areas. (KI)
- .8____ Coordinates with the ATF for procedures to control MEU aviation use during all the phases of advanced operations, emergency defense of the AFT, amphibious assault and subsequent operations ashore.
- .9____ Convenes air requirements and coordination conference, and submits for MEU's approval, a prioritized list of requested missions. (KI)
- .10____ Requests additional air support from CVBG or land based assets through the MEU headquarters if air requirement estimates indicate inadequate MEU aviation resources.
- .11____ Plans downed aircraft procedures, and ensures dissemination by operations order or SOP.
- .12____ Prepares rules of engagement, weapons conditions, and alert conditions criteria for CLF/CATF approval, and disseminates them to subordinates after approval.
- .13____ Coordinates with the GCE to develop fire support and SEAD integration procedures to be used in conjunct with close air support and assault support missions.
- .14____ Coordinates LAAD employment based on landing force/AFT requirements and threat intelligence.
- .15____ Determines basing options shore for aviation assets to include the siting of control facilities, EAF's or remote sites, if required.
- .16____ Plans amount of bulk fuel required throughout the operation to include shore based storage locations, if required.
(See Task: 7A.3.3 ACE LOGISTICS PLANNING.)
- .17____ Identifies any onshore based security requirements and coordinates with the GCE/CSSE for personnel or equipment augmentation, if required.
- .18____ Determines ammunition, bombs, rockets, and missiles required, by type, to support operations.
- .19____ Coordinates all communications requirements with the MEU CEO to include frequencies, encryption hardware/software, and authentication materials.
- .20____ Preplans TRAP requirements, and coordinates CSAR augmentation with the ATF, and ground augmentation with the GCE.
- .21____ Prior to flight operations, considers requesting/scheduling a preplanned weather reconnaissance for weather confirmation using established weather criteria as the guide.
- .22____ Coordinates a matrix for mission and weather GO/NO criteria with the supported unit and the assigned mission commander for the MEU commander's approval.
- .23____ Plans combat intelligence update methods to ensure aircrew/LAAD team have the latest available information.
- .24____ Prepares those portions of the operations plans for which the ACE has staff cognizance or staff input.
- .25____ Provides specific aviation planning considerations to the ATF, MEU, GCE, and CSSE for inclusion into their planning and/or operations orders.
- .26____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate aviation elements to include warning, reporting, detection, decontamination, exposure guidance, casualty handling, and required MOPP conditions based on MEU guidance.
- .27____ Provides continual guidance to subordinate elements throughout the planning phase by issuing SOP's, Op Orders, directives, memorandums or outline plans, and hosting staff conferences and informal briefings.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimate of supportability can be either verbal or written.

KEY INDICATORS:

INITIAL ESTIMATE OF LF AVIATION REQUIREMENTS

This initial estimate is prepared as soon as preliminary information on the assigned mission is available. This initial estimate may only include the number and type of aircraft, the control agencies necessary, and the logistic support required. Some of the air support allocations can be deduced from the aviation capabilities of the force involved, estimates of enemy air, and the general mission of the LF.

AVIATION ESTIMATE OF SUPPORTABILITY

FMFM 5-1, Appendix A, provides a sample format. The purpose is to summarize significant aviation aspects of the situation as they might influence any course of action proposed, and to evaluate and determine how aviation units can best be employed to support the contemplated landing force courses of action. The estimate is prepared by the Tactical Air Commander assisted by his staff and subordinate elements. The estimate, at a minimum, provides the following:

1. Which contemplated course(s) of action can best be supported by the ACE.
2. The salient disadvantages of less desirable courses of action.
3. Significant aviation (to include C3) limitations and problems of an operational or logistical nature.
4. Measures that can be taken to resolve existing aviation problems to include requesting additional theater assets.

ESTIMATE OF AIR SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS

The detailed planning of landing force aviation requirements commences after the MEU commander issues his concept of operations. The document is prepared by the ACE, and follows the sequence of general requirements totals, Pre D-day, D-day, and Post D-day, and other requirements affecting aviation. The document includes:

1. Number of aviation assets required by type.
2. Amount of bulk fuel necessary to support the aviation element.
3. Amount of ordnance required by type.
4. Number of landing craft and amphibious vehicles required by type to move ground based assets ashore (LAAD, airfield services, air control augmentation).
5. Amount of special equipment required by type, organic and otherwise (slings, winches, litters, etc.).

TASK: 7A.3.2 INITIATE INTELLIGENCE PLANNING

Condition(S): The MEU is in receipt of an initiating directive and has begun planning for an amphibious landing and/or, subsequent operations ashore. The embarked ACE requires updated and complete intelligence information to carry out their support efforts. The MEU and the CATF have agreed to form a JIB, and are receiving both organic and theater source information. The ACE has an S-2 assigned.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary aviation intelligence estimate upon receipt of the initiating directive. (KI)
- .2____ Prepares a detailed aviation intelligence estimate upon receipt of the ACE commander's guidance.
- .3____ Makes Early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers and subordinate elements to prepare their estimates.
- .4____ Determines, based on the assigned mission and the MEU commander's guidance, EEI's and OIR's, of the aviation combat element as a whole.
- .5____ Phrases the commander's EEI's for forwarding to the MEU in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts: a positive directive, qualifying questions, and statements directing special attention.
- .6____ Recommends a priority of effort to satisfy intelligence requirements based on the situation and guidance given.
- .7____ Determines ACE requirements for maps, charts, photographs, and other graphic aids, and plans for dissemination to subordinates.
- .8____ Coordinates with the MEU S-2 to plan Pre D-day aerial photography support for the MEU, and requests CATF assistance for those missions beyond organic capabilities.
- .9____ Coordinates with MEU S-2 for a dynamic aviation collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, debriefs of all flights, and rapid dissemination of information to higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements.
- .10____ Uses the collection plan as a basis for issuing orders and requests to collection agencies.
- .11____ Submits request for intelligence to the JIB, or through them to higher, adjacent, and supported commands.
- .12____ Assists MEU in developing an aerial reconnaissance and surveillance plan to include sensor delivery, and submits requests to CATF for those missions requiring external agencies support.
- .13____ Prepares an intelligence annex that defines the manner in which the intelligence operations of the ACE will be conducted.
- .14____ Coordinates with the MEU S-2/collection agencies in the preparation of aviation tasking assignments to provide advice on the feasibility of aviation tasks and to provide for maximum lead time.
- .15____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison, and sends information to higher headquarters and subordinate units.
- .16____ Develops and maintains a complete Enemy Order of Battle (EOB) which includes information on enemy missiles, aviation assets, EW, and naval and ground forces.
- .17____ Coordinates the fusion of all collected information to form a logical picture of hypothesis of enemy activities which might influence the ACE missions.
- .18____ Coordinates requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, and security of gathered information which the ACE S-3.
- .19____ Determines form of presentation and in coordination with the S-3 and CEO selects the means of transmission for aviation intelligence information gathered.
- .20____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent aviation intelligence support within capabilities to all elements of the MEU.
- .21____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the MEU/CATF target list to include the enemy's C3 structure.
- .22____ Provides forecasted weather information and lunar illumination to S-3/subordinate elements for use in mission planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of the preliminary estimates to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to formulate basic decisions and to assist him in issuing planning guidance.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Estimating intelligence is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the initiating corrective and continues throughout all phases of the operation. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with characteristics of the terrain in the objective area; anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected to the operation; the location, characteristics, and composition of available landing sites; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy forces in the objective area; and the location, of civilian population concentrations, and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concerned with the following five basic intelligence tasks:

1. Determination of requirements (continuous process).
2. Preparation of collection plans.
3. Processing and dissemination techniques.
4. Collection of confirmatory information.
5. Dissemination of updated intelligence information.

The intelligence estimate is normally written if planning time allows. The subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice and are normally based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. However, these changes are incorporated into the basic continuing estimate as soon as possible.

TASK: 7A.3.3 INITIATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has begun planning for an amphibious landing. The ACE commander has directed the initiation of ACE logistics planning.

STANDARDS EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Attends all logistics planning meetings of higher and adjacent commands to determine requirements and establish points of contact.
- .2___ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent logistics requirements.
- .3___ Reviews existing logistics plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .4___ Establishes coordination with MEU/ATF/CSSE elements involved in CSS operations.
- .5___ Coordinates with the S-3 in the analysis of the proposed courses of action to determine the subordinate elements (helicopters, AV-8's, LAAD, air support element), and rough numbers of troops committed ashore, the commander's priorities for support, requirements for supplies, CSSE augmentation, equipment densities, distances involved, and the anticipated duration of the operation.
- .6___ Reviews anticipated requirements with the CSSE, to include FARP sites for follow-on missions after the ship-to-shore movement, to ensure the organic capability of the CSSE to provide requested logistical support (engineering, fuel distribution, rations, medical supplies, ammo storage, etc).

- .7_____ Studies the S-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information cut fee area to determine climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, in country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc.
- .8_____ Determines and computes, in coordination with the MEU S-4/CSSE, overall logistics requirements for each phase of the type operation being planned.
- .9_____ Determines, in coordination with the MEU 5-4/CSSE, the types and quantities of supplies to be carried ashore by units as prescribed loads, as well as the types and quantities required for prestaged helicopter lifted supplies and follow-on unloading.
- .10_____ Coordinates a plan for the development of logistics support ashore for the ACE, or any element(s) that the ACE might move ashore.
- .11_____ Coordinates with the MEU/ATF/CSSE in determining the type resupply system to be used: i.e., push/pull, supply points, etc.
- .12_____ Coordinates with the MEU/ATF/CSSE in determining resupply distribution points for all requirements, to include fuels, ordnance, food, etc.
- .13_____ Determines, in coordination with MEU/LF surgeon and CSSE, medical support required for the evacuation of casualties.
- .14_____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop the logistic plan.
- .15_____ Considers, in coordination with the GCE/CSSE, crossdecking requirements to support the concept of operations.
- .16_____ Reviews the concept of CSS proposed by the MEU 5-4/ CSSE, and requests any changes/additions required.
- .17_____ Prepares ACE logistics input to the operations order.
- .18_____ Coordinates with the S-3 to ensure initial issues to aircrew/ACE elements are sufficient until they can be resupplied.
- .19_____ Provides continuous liaison/interface with the MEU S-4/ATF logistics representatives to ensure support for the needs of subordinate ACE elements.
- .20_____ Coordinates and provides logistic reports required by higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.4 CONDUCT AVIATION COMMAND AND CONTROL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The ACE staff is augmented by a MACG detachment for planning. Information on the task organization of the MEU, the expected threat, aviation asset availability, and the commander's probable courses of action have been given. Personnel are tasked to develop those portions of the Operations Order that the ACE has staff cognizance over.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Formulates MEU aviation planning, and provides liaison representatives to the ATF agencies which exercise control of aviation assets allocated to support the landing force.
- .2_____ Integrates and coordinates communications support requirements with the MEU and ATF air control agencies, to include frequency requirements, voice security devices, and authentication materials.
- .3_____ Plans for aerial radio relay or retransmission, if required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4_____ Coordinates the integration of MEU air control assets into the overall ATF C3 network (i.e., LAAD, ATC, and air support coordination capability).
- .5_____ Recommends control measures for approval and inclusion in MEU and ATF Operations Orders to include control points, handover points, and return to force procedures.
- .6_____ Plans, coordinates procedures to integrate fire support capabilities (NGF, artillery, mortars) with the aviation tactics selected.
- .7_____ Plans, coordinates, and/or recommends airspace management procedures to integrate RPV's with the aviation tactics selected.
- .8_____ Participates, with other ATF agencies, in the development and publishing of the ATO, and disseminates ATO to subordinate and supported elements.
- .9_____ Recommends an ATO format for fixed-wing and helicopter tasking that allows for complete mission information (location, control agencies, routing, frequencies, ordnance, timing, etc.) without reference to other documents.
- .10_____ Ensures requesting units are promptly informed of any missions that cannot be filled due to lack of assets.
- .11_____ Identifies needs for airborne control agencies; i.e., TAC(A), FAC(A), and/or HC(A) as required. Request outside assistance if none is locally available for a particular mission assignment.
- .12_____ Coordinates, procedures, with the GCE and SACC, to mark targets and provide landward terminal control for OAS/assault support aircraft.
- .13_____ Coordinates and participates in any required FAC party training with the GCE.
- .14_____ Establishes procedures for the coordination of ITG with reconnaissance/advance elements.
- .15_____ Publishes the requirement to have helicopter landing diagram(s), and coordinates HST procedures to be used.
- .16_____ Ensures authority and procedures to change landing zones or ingress/egress routes are clearly established in the operations order or SOP's.
- .17_____ Provides input on air defense control measures (CAP positions, RTF procedures, MEZ's, et al), assets allocations, and priorities to the CLF/CATF prior to establishing the AOA.
- .18_____ Coordinates allocation of LAAD assets to provide short-range air defense of elements moving ashore (GCE, CSSE) for the MEU commander's approval.
- .19_____ Plan contingencies in response to possible degradation or destruction of MEU/ATF C3 assets.
- .20_____ Plans movement of C3 capabilities ashore, if required, to support the scheme of maneuver by publishing "phasing control ashore" checklist.
- .21_____ Develop a pilot/controllers handbook which details communication freqs and color codes, alternate airfields, ordnance codes, code words, available NAVAID's, control measures, rules of engagement, restrictive measures, CAS brief form, abbreviated maps, and airfield diagrams for all aircrews.
- .22_____ Develop procedures to keep the MEW/ACE, and supported units, aware of current operational aviation support efforts.
- .23_____ Attends/recommends joint briefings be held for TACRON, SACC, HDC, ACE, composite squadron, AO, and TACP personnel prior to employment to reconfirm air control measures to be used.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.5 CONDUCT ANTI-AIR WARFARE PLANNING

CONDITION(S): By task organization, MEU assets for anti-air warfare are limited. A CVBG, or land-based aircraft, will provide additional aviation assets for the requirements as delineated by the CAIF/CLF. It is narrative that air superiority be established in the area of operations to permit the conduct of LF operations at a given time and place without prohibitive interference by the opposing force. The ACE tasks organic assets, and coordinates outside requirements with the ATF through the MEU staff, based on the ties set by the MEU commander.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Gain CLF's approval for allocation of AAW assets.
- .2___ Coordinates with ATF AAW planners to integrate LF offensive and defensive AAU capabilities and requirements into the ATF AAU concept.
- .3___ Coordinates ATF emergency defense plans for AV-8's, AH-1's, and LAAD, and submits recommendations to the CLF/CATF for approval. (KI)
- .4___ Disseminates emergency ATF alert procedures (sound power phones, radios, sirens) to aircrews.
- .5___ Provides ATF control procedures to assigned aircrews and LAAD gunners for use if the ATF comes under attack.
- .6___ Provides AFT airborne control frequencies to alert cress prior to launch.
- .7___ Develops aviation "scatter plan" for use if the ATF comes under attack.
- .8___ Coordinates with ATF planners for the establishment of AAW rules of engagement, warning condition, aid weapons conditions, and ensures dissemination to subordinates.
- .9___ Ensure EEI's concerning the capabilities and locations of enemy air and anti-air facilities in the objective area, as well as their ECM and ECCM capabilities, are requested from the 5-2 and passed down to the users.
- .10___ Identifies LF offensive AAW targets, analyzes and prioritizes the targets for attack, and after MEU approval passes the information to the ATF to include in the integrated target list.
- .11___ Recommends updated OAAW targets based on current intelligence information.
- .12___ Request external assets (theater, land-based) to strike LF OAAW targets, if required.
- .13___ Develops LF defensive AAU requirements to counter enemy air operations.
- .14___ Coordinates with the CATF AAW planners to ensure command representation in the appropriate afloat control facilities (SACC, TACC, CIC).
- .15___ Plans for any assets established ashore to integrate passive air defense to include the use of cover, concealment, deception, dispersion, and protective construction.
- .16___ Calculates the number of LAAD assets required to provide ground based low altitude air defense for the LF ashore.
- .17___ Coordinates with the ATF AAW planners to ensure LAAD command representation in the appropriate afloat control facilities.
- .18___ Calculates numbers of aircraft required for AAW mission areas and direct support escort of helicopterborne forces.
- .19___ Plans procedures for the timely transmission of Early warning information from the ATF assigned FAAWC/SAAWC to the LAAD teams deployed ashore through their element commander, and visual reports from the deployed LAAD teams backup to the FAAWC/SAAWC.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .20____ Established LAAD communications requirements, and coordinates these requirements with the ATF planners to ensure that LAAD Com and (LC) term mates in the TACC (afloat) and the LAAD Weapons control (LWC) net terminates in the SACC.
- .21____ Ensures dissemination of emission control standards to subordinate elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EMERGENCY DEFENSE

Marine Air Ground Task Force assets are not included in the planning for the routine defense of the ATF as that function is provided by their own weapons systems or preplanned CV8G cover. In an emergency, landing force aviation assets may be used as a final option for ATF defense when:

1. Increasing tensions, intelligence, or defense conditions indicate an attack is imminent, or the ATF is under actual attack.
2. The governing rules of engagement, permit the intercept or engagement of aircraft/boats of forces declared hostile.
3. Other circumstances or situations occur so that the CATF and CLF agree that an emergency exists.

TASK: 7A.3.6. CONDUCT ASSAULT SUPPORT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): A daily conference is held to coordinate and schedule all MEU air support requirements for the next 24 hours. Assault support includes vertical assault airlift, fixed-wing air delivery of cargo or battlefield illumination, in-flight refueling, and air evacuation. Elements of the MEU are determining their requirements for future operations, and will submit assault support requests prior to the conference. The conference is attended by representatives from the subordinate elements of the MEU and a representative from the embarked TACRON and HDC.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Calculates sorties available for assault support, and provides this information to GCE/CSSE and MEU.
- .2____ Coordinates with GCE representatives (i.e., air officer) to assist them in determining their assault support requirements at least 12 hours prior to their required operational activity.
- .3____ Coordinates with CSSE representatives to assist them in determining their logistical support requirements, including air evacuation of casualties, 12 hours prior to operational activity.
- .4____ Submits the agreed to prioritized list of all assault support requirements to the MEU for approval.
- .5____ Receives MEU approved assault support requirements and, based on the priorities assigned, begins developing detailed planning.
- .6____ Coordinates requirements for airframe configuration required to support special missions (i.e., litters to meet MEDEVAC tasking, etc.).
- .7____ Coordinates with the MEU/ATF staffs to identify medical facilities appropriate for the delivery of MEDEVAC patients.
- .8____ Recommends LZ's to the MEU/GCE, as well as alternates, based on the zone(s) of action and threat analysis.

- .9_____ Determines distance and fuel requirements, and identifies the need for aerial refueling, FARP's, LZSA's, and/or forward sites.
- .10_____ Determines the requirements for navigation/pathfinder aircraft as well as escort aircraft for troop lifts, and requests outside assistance, if required (CVBG or theater lard based assets [e.g., E2, E3]).
- .11_____ Coordinates takeoff, rendezvous, en route, and recovery time factors in consonance with subordinate elements and ATF, and provides the information to the supported unit(s) and MEU.
- .12_____ Provides terrain masking and threat avoidance information, based on a detailed terrain analysis and available intelligence, to subordinate elements for primary/alternate route planning.
- .13_____ Ensures the SOP establishes the method for supported units to request additional immediate assault support, and disseminates those procedures by recommended input to the MEU operations order.
- .14_____ Requests forecasted weather and lunar illumination when planning day/night operations.
- .15_____ Ensures procedures are established for safe flight separation during ingress/egress, and deconfliction with the GCE/ATF during the delivery of other supporting arms (NGF, artillery, CAS aircraft or RPV's).
- .16_____ Coordinates the integration of mission control points with the ATF control agencies (HDC, TACC SACC), and disseminates the updated information to subordinate elements.
- .17_____ Coordinates shipboard troop loading and refueling/rearming cycles with the ATF.
- .18_____ Develops code words to identify completion of critical mission phases and coordinates them with the MEU.
- .19_____ Provides guidance to ensure the aviation mission commander and ground element commander are in the same aircraft during critical mission phases, if feasible.
- .20_____ Coordinates emergency extraction plan with the MEU and GCE.
- .21_____ Develops contingency plans for landing at alternate airfields in friendly territory adjacent to the AOR or on ships, In an emergency.
- .22_____ Coordinates details of the tactical recovery of aircraft and personnel (TRAP) contingency plan, and ensures its dissemination to subordinate elements.
- .23_____ Plans procedures to inform the ACE, MEU ATO, and supported units of updated assault support status.
- .24_____ Provides all known assault support missions, and any standby missions, for inclusion into the ATO, and ensures dissemination to all subordinate and supported unit's.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.7 CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): Landing force objectives have been identified. MEU assets are limited to aerial reconnaissance, RPV's, photography, and aerial sensors. Timely reconnaissance is required for both initial mission planning and follow-on damage assessments.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-66

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes Early liaison with the S-2 to provide advice concerning the tactical air reconnaissance collection effort for the landing force.
- .2____ Coordinates with the ATF for the aerial reconnaissance and observation plan.
- .3____ Establishes an, SOP for the collection procedures and timely dissemination of aviation acquired combat information to all required elements.
- .4____ Recommends the request for employment of additional theater or national assets, if required to support operations.
- .5____ Assists the MEU S-2 in planning for aerial emplaced sensors (Aerial Delivered Seismic Intrusion Detectors [ADSID]), from both HI and LOW performance aircraft.
- .6____ Coordinates with the MEU S-2 for the integration of all available sensor systems under a single coordinated control system.
- .7____ Recommends aerial reconnaissance assets be used in various multi-mission roles; i.e., adjustment of fires, BDA reports, LZ studies, route reconnaissance, NAVAID to friendly forces, hand-held photography.
- .8____ Plans measures to support any organic reconnaissance mission; i.e., deception, airstrikes, ECM, escort, and/or in-flight refueling.
- .9____ Plans for surprise, speed, and the avoidance of offensive combat action in order to protect the recon aircraft and ensure the delivery of required information.
- .10____ Advises the MEU on the type of airborne electronic reconnaissance support for the ground scheme of maneuver that is available from external sources, thereby providing up-to-date EOB information.
- .11____ Coordinates with the GCE to develop an observation and surveillance plan for the objective area(s) to include tactical air observers, artillery, and naval spotters.
- .12____ Arranges for any special equipment (NVG, starlite scopes) required for visual observation at night and during periods of low visibility.
- .13____ Ensures all pilots are briefed on responsibilities for visual reconnaissance and immediate debrief for all flights.
- .14____ Requests immediate aerial imagery of the objective area and any special topographic products available.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.8 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE AIR SUPPORT (OAS)

CONDITION(S): A daily conference is held to coordinate and schedule all MEU air support requirements for the next 24 hours. Elements of the MEU are determining their requirements for future operations, and will submit pre-planned requests prior the conference. The conference will be attended by representatives from the subordinate elements of the MEU and a representative from the embarked TACRON.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Calculates daily sorties available for OAS (CAS and air interdiction), and provides this information to the MEU.
- .2____ Develops planning figures for a surge effort, identifying how long the surge effort can be sustained, how many days will be required to recover, and the sorties available during recovery.
- .3____ Coordinates with GCE air officer to determine their initial estimate of OAS (CAS and air interdiction) requirements.
- .4____ Assists the GCE and MEU in the evaluation of OAS and interdiction targets.
- .5____ Coordinates with the GCE to determine CAS allocation priorities for pre-planned and immediate missions, and submits recommendations to the MEU.
- .6____ Submits the agreed to prioritized list of all OAS requirements to the MEU for approval.
- .7____ Receives MEU commander's apportionment guidance for OAS and, based on the priorities assigned, begins developing detailing planning.
- .8____ Recommends request for additional OAS support from CVBG or land-based assets, if requirements indicate inadequate MEU aviation assets.
- .9____ Identifies significant OAS limitations and problem areas to the MEU.
- .10____ Coordinates requirements for airframe configuration required to support special missions (i.e., laser guided weapons, conventional weapons, missiles, et al.
- .11____ Recommends proposals for modifying the OAS plan if no additional assets are available.
- .12____ Coordinates with squadron/ATF ordnance personnel to ensure appropriate weapons are available consistent with type targets assigned.
- .13____ Provides terrain masking and threat avoidance information, based on a detailed terrain analysis and available intelligence, to the OAS aircrews for their detailed planning.
- .14____ Ensures procedures are established for safety of flight and deconfliction with other supporting arms (NGF artillery, mortars, and helicopter routes).
- .15____ Coordinates with the GCE to ensure ground based terminal controllers are knowledgeable and trained in current procedures and forms.
- .16____ Ensures the SOP establishes the method for supported units to request additional immediate air support, and disseminates those procedures by recommended input to the MEU operations order.
- .17____ Coordinates the integration of OAS control points (rendezvous points, contact points, initial points) with the ATF control agencies (HDC, TACC, SACC), and disseminates the information subordinate elements.
- .18____ Coordinates shipboard troop loading and refueling/rearming cycles with the ATF.
- .19____ Plans procedures to inform the ACE, MEU AO, and support units of updated air support status.
- .20____ Provides all known air support missions, and any standby missions, for inclusion into the ATO, and ensures dissemination to subordinate and supported units.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.9 CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE

CONDITION(S): By task organization, MEU assets for airborne electronic warfare are limited. A CVBG, or land-base aircraft, will provide the majority of aviation assets for the requirements as delineated by the CATF/CLF. The radio battalion has provided a Direct Support Unit (DSU) to the supported MAGTF for planning and operations. The ACE tasks organic assets, and coordinates outside aviation EW requirements with the ATF, based on the priorities set by the MEU commander.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Receives MEU commander's initial planning guidance.
- .2___ Prepares an estimate of supportability.
- .3___ Coordinates with the MEU S-2 to establish a single point of control to coordinate EW within the AOA.
- .4___ Coordinates with MEU S-2/DSU, on how aviation assets can assist in the MEU EW effort (i.e., placement of monitor teams, airborne relay, etc.).
- .5___ Ensures EW SOP's are followed and proper procedures are included in the MEU operations order, to include any reports required (MIJI, et al).
- .6___ Develops signal security plans to include all phases of communication security; i.e., cryptosecurity, transmission security, emission security, and physical security, and disseminates appropriate procedures to subordinate elements.
- .7___ Develops inputs to the necessary appendixes for the concept of airborne EW (airborne and/or ground based) for the CATF/CLF. (KI)
- .8___ Determines and requests EW support augmentation for direct support of specific aviation missions assigned.
- .9___ Request aircraft for airborne electronic surveillance with real time reporting over secure tactical communications nets, when required.
- .10___ Ensures all mission plans include both active and passive EW (any aircraft can be used as an airborne listening platform).
- .11___ Conducts OPSEC/COMSEC monitoring and reporting as directed by the MEU.
- .12___ Ensures that all planners, operators, and users of electronic equipment thoroughly understand the EW threat.
- .13___ Ensures aviation self defense ECM/ECCM capabilities are installed and are operable; i.e., RHAW gear, DECM equipment, chaff, and flares, on all aircraft.
- .14___ Coordinates with the MEU for a viable ECCM plan (to include EMCON) which accounts for varying enemy threat capabilities.
- .15___ Develops procedures to ensure ERIM's and ERIR's generated from the CVBG or tend based assets are requested through the MEU S-2.
- .16___ Plans procedures for the emergency extraction of monitoring or radio relay teams, if required.
- .17___ Ensures inclusion of EW plans when conducting rehearsals.
- .18___ Submits EW reports per the established SOP's and/or operations orders in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

ELECTRONIC WARFARE

EW is the use of electromagnetic energy to determine, exploit, reduce, or prevent hostile use of the electromagnetic spectrum and those actions which retain friendly use of the electromagnetic spectrum. Three categories are included:

1. Electronic Warfare Support Measures (ESM). That division of EW involving actions taken under the direct control of an operational commander to search for intercept, and identify/locate sources of radiated electromagnetic energy for the purpose of immediate threat recognition.
 - a. Electronic Countermeasures DEEM). Those actions taken to prevent or reduce an enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum.
 2. Electronic Countermeasures (ECM). Those actions taken to prevent or reduce an enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum.
 - a. Electronic Jamming. Deliberate radiation, reradiation, or reflection of electronic energy with the object of impairing the use of electronic devices, equipment, or systems used by the enemy.
 - b. Electronic Deception. Deliberate radiation, alteration, or absorption of reflection of electromagnetic energy in a manner intended to be received by enemy electronic systems. Both manipulative and imitative deception are included.
 3. Electronic Counter-Countermeasures (ECCM). That division of EW involving actions taken to retain to effective use of use of the electromagnetic spectrum.
-

TASK: 7A.3.10 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked ACE has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit, and a CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and correct fire, both fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with S-2/3 to gain information on the enemy, terrain, weather, concept of ACE operations, ground scheme of maneuver, intended location of friendly forces, COMSEC requirements, etc.
- .2____ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent communications requirements.
- .3____ Participates in MEU/ATF communication conferences to identify communications requirements, and to obtain technical and administrative instructions.
- .4____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability for each course of actions considered by the ACE.
- .5____ Ensures message distribution is planned, to include distribution to any units deployed ashore, in accordance with procedures in the communications SOP.
- .6____ Coordinates the employment of various types of radios to ensure reliable communications by providing multiple communications paths, and spreads of frequencies across each spectrum.
- .7____ Plans for continuous communications redundancy and identifies alternate means of communications (signal flares, lights, panels, flags, et al). Requests any known geographic and/or climatic communications limitations. Coordinates with subordinate elements to ensure required connectivity is planned.
- .8____ Request any known geographic and/or climatic communications limitations.
- .9____ Coordinates with subordinate elements to ensure required connectivity is planning.
- .10____ Develops a COMSEC plan, and coordinates with MEU CEO to monitor COMSEC, providing friendly CEOI information such as identification of key nets, times of changing callsigns, frequencies, crypto, etc.

- .11____ Coordinates the use and allocation of COMSEC equipment and materials based on the commander's guidance.
- .12____ Ensures the communication plan reflects secure voice equipment, correct key lists, and edition nurseries, and verifies that subordinates possess them.
- .13____ Submits the ACE prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements rid the MEU and/or embarked ship's communications officer.
- .14____ Identifies interoperability problems with ATF, CVBG, and/or theater assets.
- .15____ Determines SATCOM requirements, and requests equipment and access if required.
- .16____ Requests frequencies for operations, rehearsal, COMMEX and/or CPX.
- .17____ Coordinates with the MEU/GCE/CSSE for any aerial retransmission requirements.
- .18____ Ensures communications discipline measures are adhered to during planning.
- .19____ Coordinates with the ACE S-3 for communications input to the pilot/controllers handbook.
- .20____ Provides input to the communications annex of the ACE operations order.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.11 CONDUCT ACE BRIEFING

CONDITION(S): The CATF/CLF has published the ATO for the first day of the amphibious operation. All liaison has been performed by the ACE, and mission planning is complete. The ACE holds an aviation brief prior to each day's activities to ensure coordination of effort.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N; NE

- .1____ Briefs detailed ground scheme of maneuver, forces and weapons involved, control points, LZ's/alternate LZ's, ingress/egress routes, and escorts.
- .2____ Clearly states mission priorities.
- .3____ Briefs fire support integration plan; assets available, and control measures.
- .4____ Coordinates intelligence briefing of latest threat information available.
- .5____ Briefs current rules of engagement/Alert conditions and/or Weapons conditions information.
- .6____ Provides EEI's for visual reconnaissance.
- .7____ Briefs SOP for authority to change routes, LZ's, and/or targets.
- .8____ Briefs SOP for downed aircraft over land or sea, to include escape and evasion considerations.
- .9____ Briefs time line.
- .10____ Briefs COMM plan to include NORDO procedures, code words, frequencies, EMCOU/ECCM procedures, aircraft and ground signals, etc.
- .11____ Briefs deception plan if required.
- .12____ Specifically briefs the command information required by the ACE during operations, and the communication methods to be used for transmission of that information.

- .13____ Briefs any changes to ATF control procedures or the ATF contact frequencies.
- .14____ Briefs any changes to control points, handover points, and return to force procedures.
- .15____ Briefs FAPP requirements, locations, and control procedures, if required.
- .16____ Briefs AV-8 forward sites, security requirements, and control procedures, if required.
- .17____ Briefs the ATF on the requirements for AV-8's to return to their ship for rearming, refueling, and maintenance requirements.
- .18____ Briefs friendly locations of air defense assets (LAAD) ashore, and any changing MEZ requirements.
- .19____ Briefs any changes to TACP control procedures or communications requirements.
- .20____ Briefs any changes to the Pilot/Controller handbook.
- .21____ Briefs availability of oncall EW, smoke obscuring, or illumination missions.
- .22____ Briefs availability of additional theater aviation assets for AAW, OAS, or C3 augmentation requirements.
- .23____ Affords participants the opportunity to ask questions in order to ensure a thorough understanding.
- .24____ Establishes the time and place of debriefing.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.3.12 COORDINATE ACE EXECUTION

CONDITION(S): The ACE and his staff continuously monitor current Operations and take appropriate actions as necessary. Representing the ACE, assigned staff members coordinate with elements of the MEU and appropriate ATF control agencies to ensure integration of efforts, and continuity of aviation support to the MEU.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- 1.____ Prebriefs daily operations with ATF control agencies and staff members to ensure a common understanding of objectives.
- 2.____ Supervises the conduct of the operation from a position immediately accessible to the MEU commander and alters plans, if required, by changes in the scheme of maneuver or the enemy situation.
- 3.____ Disseminates any changes of procedures or communications to subordinates as dictated by the operational situation.
- .4____ Provides updated advice and planning considerations to the MEU/GCE as to how aviation assets can assist the landing force in their current tactical situation.
- .5____ Monitors any delays to preplanned missions, and/or mission aborts, and provides recommendations for alternative actions to the MEU/supported unit.
- .6____ Revalidates and reprioritizes the GCE air interdiction and CAS targets as changes to the scheme of maneuver occur.
- .7____ Coordinates continuous updating of OAS target lists with the GCE.
- .8____ Provides liaison personnel to ATF control agencies with access to the communications networks required to ensure aviation support to the deployed landing force by monitoring mission progress.

- .9___ Monitors JTAR's/HR's for completeness and advises ATF control agencies to ensure appropriate support is assigned.
- .10___ Coordinates with S-2 to ensure all signal intelligence and EW assets of the CATF/CLF are fully employed, and information is continuously disseminated to subordinate elements.
- .11___ Ensures procedures for updating all source, theater intelligence information are established, and subordinate elements are kept informed.
- .12___ Ensures contingency requirements and emergencies are handled according to plans, and SOP procedures are tactically sound.
- .13___ Ensures Early warning information and alert conditions are passed in a timely manner to deployed LAAD teams.
- .14___ Ensures time line is adhered to.
- .15___ Launches preplanned reaction forces if required by the tactical situation (MEDEVAC, TRAP force, mechanics, combat reinforcements, etc.).
- .16___ Recommends CVBG or theater augmentation for all aviation functions, if required by the tactical situation.
- .17___ Selects multiple AV-8 forward sites that remain far enough removed from hostile action to preclude large security requirements.
- .18___ Maintains status of all MEU aviation assets for the possibility of assignments/changes.
- .19___ Prepares to establish air support coordination ashore with the GCE/FSCC, if required by the scheme of maneuver.
- .20___ Ensures LZ control officer and HST/ATC personnel are available for shore based control if required.
- .21___ Conducts a post operation evaluation to discuss lessons learned, and uses positive points to update contingency plans and SOP's.
- .22___ Evaluation negative points are resolved and changes are made to contingency plans and SOP's, if applicable.
- .23___ Continues planning for future operations.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

7A.4 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)

TASK: 7A.4.1 CONDUCT CSS/LOGISTICS STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed staff planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .2____ Analyzes the mission and available information to identify inherent CSS requirements.
- .3____ Reviews the MEU, S-2's intelligence estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy, and information on the area as well as climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, local transportation, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc. (See Task: 7A.4.2 CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PLANNING)
- .4____ Develops, in coordination with the MEU headquarters, a detailed logistics estimate of supportability which compares all CSS related factors influencing each proposed tactical course of action (i.e., logistics requirements, availability of means, and identified shortfalls).
- .5____ Develops proposed CSS courses of action based on the MEU commander's planning guidance, proposed operational courses of action, the area of operations and availability, and/or sources of supply.
- .6____ Exchanges CSS information with MEU, ACE, and GCE logistics planners throughout the estimation and planning process.
- .7____ Uses the CSS estimate of supportability to develop and analyze courses of action for CSS; i.e., task organization for CSS, subordinate mission assignments, and the echeloning of consumable supplies to support the ACE and GCE.
- .8____ Computes detailed logistics requirements for each stage of the operation, based on types of support and quantities required, and coordinates priority of support with the MEU commander/S-4.
- .9____ Identifies in coordination with the MEU commander and ATF agencies, local or interservice sources of CSS, particularly facilities, supplies and, transportation; determines the location of supplies and their availability; and establishes procedures to allow for the requesting of required assets.
- .10____ Conducts a survey of the available areas and facilities to identify provisions for reception, offload, clearance, and storage of supplies and equipment; access to routes for distribution and evacuation; and coordinates the planned use of these areas and facilities with the CE/GCE/ACE.
- .11____ Task organizes the CSSE based on tasks, available resources, estimated workload, and provisions for command and control.
- .12____ Coordinates, in conjunction with the MEU command element, the types and quantities of supplies to ashore by landing force units as well as the types and quantities required for floating dumps, prestaged helicopter lifted supplies, arch selective unloading.
- .13____ Determines logistical shortfalls, problem areas, and CSS limitations, and forwards them to the MEU headquarters with recommendations to alleviate these problems.
- .14____ Provides input to the MEU's concept of logistics support.
- .15____ Develops a CSS concept of support which contains the mission of CSSE, tactical concepts of operations by phase, CSS requirements for each phase, broken down by functional area, and a CSS concept for each phase to include major CSS task organizations and their location.
- .16____ Establishes continuing coordination with ATF planners involved with CSS operations as well as GCE and ACE logistics planners.
- .17____ Ensures published CSS policies and procedures are contained in MEU and CSSE SOP.
- .18____ Determines, in coordination with the CSSE, medical requirements for the evacuation of casualties, medical and dental support, medical supply, establishment ashore of primary treatment, and temporary hospitalization. (See Task: 7A.4.12 PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES.)
- .19____ Reviews embarkation data and considers any crossdecking requirements.
- .20____ Computes, in coordination with the MEU headquarters, civil affairs support requirements, and computes these needs with available in-country resources in order to determine shortfalls. (See Task: 7A 4.19 CIVIL AFFAIRS PLANNING.)

- .21____ Identifies, in coordination with the MEU headquarters, requirements for base development, rehabilitation, or other construction requirements.
- .22____ Provides input for the MEU operations plan/order as required.
- .23____ Ensures CSS annex of the MEU operations plan/order contains formal mission statements for subordinate CSS elements, and sets forth specific CSS policies.
- .24____ Ensures CSS concept provides for CSS support to be provided as geographically far forward as possible to minimize delivery delays.
- .25____ Provides representation, in coordination with the MEU S-3/4 and GCE, to the TACLOG for the ship-to-shore movement.
- .26____ Develops contingency plans and recommendations for consideration by the MEU staff for dealing with identified shortfalls, problems, and CSS limitations.
- .27____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate CSSE elements to include warning reporting, detection, decontamination, exposure guidance, MOPP, casualty handling, and resupply of NBC equipment based on guidance from the MEU headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimates can be either written or verbal, depending on the situation and time available.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.2 CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious Landing. The MEU's are currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate upon receipt of the initiating directive.
- .2____ Prepares a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance.
- .3____ Determines, based on the assigned mission and guidance from the commander, CSS intelligence requirements, basic requirements, EEI's and OLR's of the CSSE.
- .4____ Coordinates, with other members of the CSSE, to develop logistics intelligence requirements; i.e., availability of local resources, sources of supply, available facilities, road networks, effects of weather, etc.
- .5____ Coordinates with the MEU S-2 for a dynamic collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, and reflects the status of the collection effort.
- .6____ Utilizes a collection worksheet to monitor the collection effort.
- .7____ Submits a prioritized list of intelligence requirements to the MEU S-2, or through them to higher, adjacent, and supporting commands.
- .8____ Makes Early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .9____ Determines CSSE requirements for maps, charts, photographs, and other graphic aids.
- .10____ Coordinates with the MEU counterintelligence officer to provide CI analysis of the operating area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .11____ Verifies the list of civilian population centers and places protected by the law of war.
- .12____ Identifies reporting instructions; i.e , time constraints and to whom to report.
- .13____ Considers all organic collection assets available to the MEU to support the collection effort when requesting support.
- .14____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison.
- .15____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .16____ Integrates the collected information with other outside source material (national/theater) to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities and capabilities.
- .17____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .18____ Prepares an intelligence annex to the CSSE operations order that defines the manner in which intelligence operations will be conducted.
- .19____ Ensures the intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the MEU SOP for intelligence.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.3 DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT

CONDITIONS(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit, awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Conducts mission analysis and identifies implied communications requirements.
- .2____ Requests available intelligence and combat information which is applicable to communications planning; e.g., enemy EW capabilities, terrain, weather.
- .3____ Reviews task organization and command relationships for communications needlines for the CSSE.
- .4____ Reviews communications SOP, contingency plans, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .5____ Validates internal and external needlines for current and future operations.
- .6____ Identifies types of information to be exchanged; i.e., data, voice, facsimile, etc.
- .7____ Determines estimated volume of traffic.
- .8____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability based on proposed CSSE courses of action.
- .9____ Submits the CSSE prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements to the MEU and/or embarked ship's communications officer.
- .10____ Refines concept of communications support based on the commander's guidance.
- .11____ Reviews overall communication readiness.
- .12____ Prepares and publishes a communications plan that provides for reliability, speed, flexibility, and security as well as communications for contingency plans.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-76

- .13____ Employs circuit profile analysis techniques.
- .14____ Submits recommended prioritization of communications equipment, frequencies, and CDMSEC materials.
- .15____ Demonstrates knowledge of all communications available (i.e., AUTODIN, AUTOVON, AUTOSEVOCOM) while en route to the objective area.
- .16____ Provides input to the MEU communications electronic operation instructions (CEOI's) based on the logistic concept of operations and procedures contained in the COMM SOP.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.4 CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU, and the CEO has begun detailed communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with internal staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, and make recommendations on communications support.
- .2____ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, make recommendations on communications support, acquire status of on-hand equipment, etc.
- .3____ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the identified needlines.
- .4____ Determines and allocates the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .5____ Coordinates with higher/adjacent commands to receive and identify liaison requirements, doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, and make recommendations .
- .6____ Requests external support (ATF/higher headquarters/host nation/U.S. Embassy) for frequencies, TSR's, communications guard shifts, AUTODIN access requirements, satellite access requests, etc.
- .7____ Submits frequency requests based on the use of frequency propagation analysis tools (previous experience, ECAC, Advanced Prophet, CAC, etc.).
- .8____ Provides inputs and staff coordination in the development of the MEU EW plan and C3CM plan.
- .9____ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communications plan.
- .10____ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, MHE, POL, etc., to support communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.5 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The CSSE has been alerted, and is actively involved during the initial stages of communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes transmission security requirements based on command relationships and MEU guidance.
- .2____ Establishes emissions security requirements based on MEU guidance.
- .3____ Determines cryptological security requirements based on MEU guidance.
- .4____ Ensures intertheater COMSEC package (ICP) for joint operations is heed and meets mission requirements.
- .5____ Ensures and verifies that subordinates possess the keying materials and CMS equipment required.
- .6____ Ensures and verifies that subordinates possess the keying materials and CMS equipment required.
- .7____ Coordinates the use of and allocation of COMSEC equipment.
- .8____ Coordinates the control, acquisition, handling, storage, and distribution of COMSEC materials with CMS custodian.
- .9____ Plans for adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces.
- .10____ Develops an emergency action plan (EAP) for use when established ashore.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.6 PLAN SUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires an amphibious elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted and has begun detailed supply planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL Y; N; NE

- .1____ Develops supply plans based on procedures contained in the CSSE SOP.
- .2____ Identifies the location of supplies and ammunition aboard amphibious shipping.
- .3____ Identifies any cross-decking requirements of supplies, ammunition, and equipment to support the MEU concept of operations.
- .4____ Identifies the requirement to establish supply storage locations ashore, and the operating levels of supplies by class to be maintained.
- .5____ Coordinates with the engineer officer to identify any requirement to establish a fuel dispensing system ashore. (See Task: 7A.4.11 PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS.)
- .6____ Identifies the requirement to establish water production/distribution ashore.
- .7____ Plans procedures for follow-on resupply requests to the appropriate supply source(s).
- .8____ Coordinates with the ATF staff concerning the shipboard issuance of supplies, ammunition, and equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9____ Coordinates with CSSE staff concerning proposed location of depots ashore, and ensures planned storage per the SOP and appropriate TM's.
- .10____ Ensures medical supplies requiring separate storage and distribution are considered.
- .11____ Proposes control measures for the issuance of critical ammunition items.
- .12____ Coordinates transportation support for the movement of supplies ashore and inland.
- .13____ Identifies any special environmental and physical protection requirements for all classes of supplies.
- .14____ Coordinates the provision for the revetting/protection of ammunition and fuel dumps.
- .15____ Coordinates resupply procedures with the supported units and the CSSE S-3 to include force feeding supplies to units when required.
- .16____ Develops salvage policy and procedures in coordination with other CSSE staff members.
- .17____ Develops a reports control system that stresses only the limited information that is absolutely essential.
- .18____ Determines material handling equipment (MHE) requirements.
- .19____ Provides supply input for inclusion in the CSSE operations order/plan.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.7 PLAN MAINTENANCE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted and has begun detailed maintenance planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with the supported unit's S-4 to identify anticipated equipment densities ashore in order to determine an accurate supply block.
- .2____ Develops a maintenance concept that provides for the direct exchange of modules, components, and assemblies (secondary repairables); and allows for work to be performed as geographically far forward as possible to reduce delay time.
- .3____ Determines the locations of facilities ashore, and the requirements for shelters, physical scarcity, specialized skills and tools, sources of power and lighting, handstand, camouflage and dispersion, and trafficability into and out of the facility.
- .4____ Recommends a "time to repair" criteria to the CSSE in the development of evacuation procedures.
- .5____ Coordinates the availability of work and shop spaces aboard ATF ships.
- .6____ Develops concept for maintenance contact teams, to include provisions for team organization, transportation, tools and equipment, component parts, security, navigation, food, and water.
- .7____ Identifies supply requirements to ensure the ready availability of repair parts, and coordinates how these supplies (to include parts) are to be packaged and moved ashore; e.g., boxes, vans, etc.
- .8____ Develops an overflow maintenance plan for assisting the maintenance effort of the supported units.
- .9____ Provides input to the salvage concept of the CSSE operations order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.8 PLAN MOTOR TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted and has begun detailed motor transport planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N: NE

- .1____ Motor transport officer (MTO) participates in all phases of planning.
- .2____ Establishes procedures for the centralized control of MT assets ashore based on provisions in the SOP to include establishing priorities and allocating critical resources.
- .3____ Provides staff input during the development of the logistics and CSS estimates of supportability.
- .4____ Requests intelligence/information to determine beach trafficability, soil characteristics, weight bearing properties, beach gradients, the location of sand bars, etc.
- .5____ Coordinates the traffic circulation plan with the CSSE to ensure timely and responsive movement.
- .6____ Determines overall MT support requirements, and ensures effective use is made of the transport capability of the vehicles consistent with tactical considerations.
- .7____ Determines the number and types of vehicles, if any, to land with the assault echelon.
- .8____ Coordinates motor transport assistance for landing assets ashore.
- .9____ Determines maintenance assets required to service and repair the MEU vehicle fleet.
- .10____ Ensures that security for MT assets is planned to include cover and camouflage when vehicles are not in use.
- .11____ Establishes a schedule for vehicle preparation and inspection prior to moving ashore.
- .12____ Schedules surf driving technique review classes for all drivers.
- .13____ Determines the requirement to transport bulk liquid (fuel and water) when established ashore.
- .14____ Coordinates communications requirements to ensure sufficient equipment, frequencies, and callsigns are available.
- .15____ Establishes a reports control system based on the SOP that stresses only the absolutely required information.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.9 CONDUCT LANDING SUPPORT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted and has begun detailed landing support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Identifies beaches and helicopter landing zones (HLZ's) to be support based on the MEU planning guidance.
- .2____ Requests information on the analysis of beach and inland terrain conditions to include HLZ's and drop zones, local resources, climate, routes of communications, and installations.
- .3____ Computes the cargo and vehicular discharge through put rates of the beach, port, or other facilities to be used during the offload.
- .4____ Identifies the quantity are types of supplies to be landed, and the types of containers to be used during movement.
- .5____ Determines the availability of landing force support personnel, supplies, and equipment.
- .6____ Analyzes the overall requirements for landing support assistance, and identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements to include Navy augmentation.
- .7____ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .8____ Plans the phasing ashore of LFSP assets to establish facilities based on the commander's concept of operations and the concept for logistics support.
- .9____ Develops LFSP plan which contains instructions for control, organization of the BSA and LZA's and CSSA, use of floating dumps, and priorities for landing LSB equipment.
- .10____ Task organizes LFSP personnel and equipment to support planned waterborne and/or helicopterborne assaults.
- .11____ Identifies depot sites, in coordination with other CSS planners, inland from the beach.
- .12____ Establishes the initial priority of preparing and monitoring beaching points and access roads.
- .13____ Identifies the initial locations of where various categories of supplies are to be landed, and where casualties are to be evacuated.
- .14____ Coordinates plans for initial supplies and equipment to be vehicle loaded, pelletized, and/or in packaged lifts to permit the rapid movement inland to using units or separated inland depots, and reduce congestion at the water's edge.
- .15____ Plans for the landing of LSFP reconnaissance teams early in the scheduled waves to verify tentatively selected sites for various beach installations, and serve as guides.
- .16____ Coordinates casualty evacuation and disaster recovery plans.
(See Task: 7A.4.12 PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES.)
- .17____ Coordinates liaison procedures to be used with the TACLOG.
- .18____ Determines cargo handling requirements, both personnel and equipment, to ensure MHE capable of lifting and proving supplies rapidly are available.
- .19____ Coordinates the provisions for the physical security of BSA's, LZSA's, and/or CSSA's.
- .20____ Coordinates military police support to include traffic control, handling of prisoners of war (POW's) and military dog. (See Task: 7A.4.14 PLAN MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT.)
- .21____ Identifies any special requirements for additional personnel augmentation and/or equipment support.
- .22____ Schedules specialized cargo handling training for personnel to the ship's platoon.

- .23____ Identifies procedures to be used to record and report which element's supplies and equipment are landed.
- .24____ Coordinates the location of depot sites which provide for dispersion, cover and concealment, and availability of existing routes of communications.
- .25____ Identifies the requirements and procedures for beach and HLZ marking designations, cleared access lines, and NAVAID equipment (both visual and electronic) based on the SOP.
- .26____ Coordinates traffic control both within the beach support area and HLZ's to facilitate traffic circulation.
- .27____ Determines the requirement for installing beach matting.
- .28____ Designates the safe separation of ammunition and safe distances from the beach area and the fuel unloading point.
- .29____ Establishes procedures for the handling of supplies within each dump, ensuring supplies are segregated by type and other distinguishing characteristics to ensure rapid inventory and issue.
- .30____ Establishes procedures for unloading and handling of ammunition that are per the procedures contained in the SOP.
- .31____ Designates cargo handling procedures which reduce the manpower requirements and make maximum use of mechanical equipment.
- .32____ Coordinates with operational planners to ensure adequate engineer equipment and personnel are included in scheduled waves to establish beach egress routes.
- .33____ Coordinates the early landing of LFSP personnel and equipment to ensure the availability to unload, segregate, store, safeguard, and issue supplies as they are brought ashore.
- .34____ Coordinates the establishment of evacuation stations on the beach.
- .35____ Coordinates the establishment of POW and straggler collection points.
- .36____ Plans for the provision of fire fighting and floodlight equipment.
- .37____ Determines the requirement for cargo nets, slings, and other HST equipment at the various HLZ's.
- .38____ Ensures provisions are made for conducting night operations.
- .39____ Coordinates provisions for the reduction of mines and other obstacles on the beach.
- .40____ Prepares heliteams.
- .41____ Ensures prepackaged supplies are kept within the weight limitations of the cargo handling equipment available at the landing site.
- .42____ Determines techniques of aerial supply delivery; i.e., helicopter, parachute, or free dropped.
- .43____ Identifies the communications requirements as flow lines based on the needs between elements of the LFSP, waterborne and helicopterborne assault units, control elements, and other supporting agencies as well as lateral communications between beaches and helicopter LZ's.
- .44____ Establishes procedures for submitting reports and establishment of records and overlays per the SOP.
- .45____ Ensures the LFSP task organization allows for the immediate establishment of communications ashore.
- .46____ Determines the requirement for offshore transfer operations.
- .47____ Prepares and submits a landing support party plan for inclusion in the CSS annex of the operations order.
- .48____ Participates in contingency planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.10 PLAN DELIBERATE ENGINEERING SUPPORT

CONDITIONS(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by element of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed engineer support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Develops plans based on procedures contained in the CSSE SOP.
- .2___ Identifies engineer support requirements based on the assigned mission to include engineer reconnaissance; deliberate construction of field fortifications and protective structures; storage and maintenance of facilities, and utilities; construction, repair, and maintenance of VTOL sites and HLZ's; construction, equipment support, and technical assistance in developing CSS facilities to include beach preparation; development of routes of communications; deliberate demolitions and obstacle removal to include explosive and nonexplosive obstacles.
- .3___ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .4___ Determines intelligence and combat information requirements based on the area of operations, enemy, terrain, and weather.
- .5___ Requests special topographical products on the area of operations.
- .6___ Submits recommendations on the employment of engineers.
- .7___ Coordinates the development of engineer tasking based on the commander's priorities.
- .8___ Identifies arty cross-decking requirements.
- .9___ Issues a warning order to subordinates and begins detailed planning.
- .10___ Requests information on the availability of local resources, sources, and procedures to acquire needed materials and equipment.
- .11___ Locates bridges in the area of operations, and attempts to determine their classification from available information, identify fords, and/or coordinate a reconnaissance effort to determine the information.
- .12___ Calculates the type and amount of class IV and class V required to support the engineer efforts.
- .13___ Prepares sketches or detailed plans on assigned engineer tasks.
- .14___ Coordinates equipment augmentation requirements to include MHE.
- .15___ Coordinates any movement of class IV and V materials.
- .16___ Determines the requirement to prepackage standard loads of class IV materials such as palletizing pickets, barbed wire, and mines necessary to lay a 100 meter minefield.
- .17___ Identifies any beach improvement/preparation work, calculates the time and support required, ensures personnel and equipment are landed early to accomplish the task, and conducts the necessary staff coordination.
- .18___ Coordinates the location of planned helicopter LZ's required staging areas, fueling areas, taxi areas, tonnage and troops to be landed, anticipated numbers of helicopters, etc.

- .19____ Coordinates the location of vertical takeoff landing (VTOL) sites, time requirements, security, required parking areas, and required markings.
- .20____ Determines the degree of soil preparation required for HLZ's and VTOL sites.
- .21____ Coordinates provisions for the employment of demolition support.
- .22____ Plans for the clearing of vehicle lanes through minefields ensuring standard procedures are used to mark the entrance and exit points.
- .23____ Provides for beach minesweeping capability.
- .24____ Identifies any requirements for expedient road surfacing, and determines equipment/material requirements.
- .25____ Provides advice in regards to any planned obstacle breach, recommending tactics, techniques and procedures, and personnel and equipment available.
- .26____ Schedules the rehearsal of procedures contained in the engineer SOP for advanced demolition techniques, actions and responsibilities for deliberate demolitions, and obstacle removal.
- .27____ Develops a countermobility plan and integrates the plan into the overall CSSE defensive plan.
- .28____ Prepares sketches, diagrams, and specifications required for the construction of protective shelters, emplacements, etc.
- .29____ Identifies mobile electrical power (MEP), bath, and water requirements.
- .30____ Prepares engineer documents for inclusion in the supported unit's operations plan.
- .31____ Identifies required reports, specific formats, and forms to use.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.11 PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS

CONDITIONS(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed bulk fuel planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with operational planners to identify the operational requirements, amount and type of bulk fuel to include the capacity of the distribution system, and the required levels to be maintained ashore.
- .2____ Computes, in coordination with logistical planners, both bulk and packaged fuel requirements to support planned operations as well as contingency plans.
- .3____ Coordinates MEU resupply schedules based upon estimated requirements, availability of products, and transportation.
- .4____ Prepares long range-estimates (10/20/30 days of supply) for bulk fuel resupply, and identifies procedures to request the fuel.
- .5____ Coordinates the siting of storage and dispensing points that avoid the congestion along MSR's and take advantage of cover and concealment.
- .6____ Determines the method of distribution; i.e., unit or issue point, and equipment to be used in dispensing fuel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7____ Advises the CSS commander on the personnel, supplies, and equipment required to operate the refueling point(s) based on operational requirements, and the time required to prepare and install a dispensing system.
- .8____ Coordinates site preparation requirements with engineer planners.
- .9____ Determines the requirement for the air delivery of fuel, and/or "wet wing" resupply.
- .10____ Identifies transportation requirements and submits requests for support.
- .11____ Plans for receipt and quality control procedures of bulk and packaged petroleum products based on guidance in the SOP.
- .12____ Plans procedures to be used to recover and dispose of petroleum products.
- .13____ Plans for the inspection of petroleum products to include on-hand stocks, as well as captured fuel and that procured from host nation suppliers, to determine quality, and check for contamination using the standards contained in TM 9130-12.
- .14____ Plans provisions for the safe receipt, storage, and issue of petroleum products acquired from the ATF.
- .15____ Plans for the security of storage and dispensing sites.
- .16____ Identifies MHE requirements.
- .17____ Coordinates with ACE personnel to identify personnel, supplies, and equipment to be deployed during FARP operations, and procedures to be used in installing the system and in refueling aircraft.
- .18____ Plans and coordinates with ACE on procedures for "hot refueling" aircraft, when using TAFDS or HERS equipment, based on guidance contained in the SOP and TM 9130-12.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.12 PLAN HEALTH SERVICES

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed health services planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Participates in all stages of operational planning.
- .2____ Establishes a medical services operations center (MSOC) in accordance with the medical SOP.
- .3____ Requests medical intelligence on the area of operations to include available resources both in the AOA and in the general region.
- .4____ Provides input to the MAGTF medical and CSS estimate of supportability.
- .5____ Reviews the provisions contained in the medical SOP in relation to the assigned mission and makes changes where required. (KI)
- .6____ Coordinates with the LF surgeon for the integration of medical support units throughout the MEU to ensure responsive and adequate treatment of casualties.
- .7____ Coordinates with the LF surgeon to ensure the medical support plan conforms with the scheme of maneuver and reflects the MEU commander's guidance.

- .8___ Develops the plan for casualty overload at the BAS or other medical units in the field.
- .9___ Coordinates mass casualty treatment and evacuation plans with both the MEU and ATF staff agencies to include requesting augmentation of mobile medical augmentation readiness teams (MMART) based on the estimated medical workload requirements.
- .10___ Maintains up-to-date information on medical regulating assets and facilities.
- .11___ Coordinates the assignment and dental personnel to augment medical personnel in the event or mass casualties.
- .12___ Ensures casualty evacuation policies are coordinated with GCE and ACE medical elements.
- .13___ Coordinates the scheduling of self aid and buddy aid training for troops prior to the landing.
- .14___ Coordinates with the ATF/LF surgeon in the designating of the casualty receiving and treatment ships (CRT's).
- .15___ Ensures the CSSE medical element assigned to support units ashore is organized, equipped, supplied, and ready to deploy with the supported unit.
- .16___ Reviews procedures for the displacement of CSSE medical units ashore, and conducts, at a minimum, a staff rehearsal of movement plans.
- .17___ Ensures immunizations are up-to-date for deployed personnel.
- .18___ Coordinates with MP to arrange support for the custody and accounting of injured POW's and civilians.
- .19___ Coordinates the scheduling of a mass casualty practice during the rehearsal phase.
- .20___ Plans provisions for handling casualties under NBC conditions.
- .21___ Coordinates with the CSSE to ensure NBC decontamination teams are available to provide decontamination services.
- .22___ Coordinates with the ATF medical staff and LF surgeon concerning the plan for medical regulating to include out of theater regulating.
- .23___ Plans for the establishment and operation of medical evacuation stations to perform triage functions.
- .24___ Coordinates procedures for the treatment and handling of sick, injured, or wounded civilians as directed by the LF surgeon.
- .25___ Coordinates the priorities for patient evacuation from shore to ship as directed by the LF surgeon.
- .26___ Develops a plan for whole blood supply in coordination with the CATF/LF surgeon.
- .27___ Ensures procedures are established for mortuary holding facilities.
- .28___ Plans and coordinates dental support for the MAGTF.
- .29___ Develops a plan for preventive medicine measures for the control of disease(s); i.e sanitation, disease surveillance, and occupational analysis.
- .30___ Coordinates casualty: reporting procedures with all appropriate staff agencies.
- .31___ Bases priority of treatment for patients only on urgent medical reasons, not patient's status as friendly or enemy.
- .32___ Determines the type and degree of medical involvement in civil affairs.
- .33___ Prepares the medical appendix to the CSS annex of the operations order.
- .34___ Coordinates communications support of both medical and dental units.

- .35_____ Provides for a reports control system which stresses only information absolutely required as directed by the ATF/LF surgeon.
- .36_____ Prepares alternate plans, in coordination with other MEU operational planners, for the redistribution of medical support resources to meet anticipated changes in the tactical situation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MEDICAL PLANNING

The health services support unit and medical commander participate, in coordination with Command Element medical planners, in health services planning from initial stages and are a continuing participant throughout the planning phase. In addition to the routine staff concerns discussed in FMFM 3-1, Command and Staff Action, planning includes requesting and using medical intelligence resources and having knowledge of external medical support capabilities; i.e., from the host nation and other services.

MEDICAL SOP'S

Include sections on:

1. Training of combat troops in self aid and buddy aid.
2. Litter team training and plan for acquisition of additional litter teams when required.
3. Medical support facility movement, establishment, operation, disestablishment, and relocation.
4. Plan for medical regulating.
5. Casualty overload and mass casualty procedures.
6. Narcotics, controlled substances, and the security, and accountability of other controlled items.
7. Procedures for resupply.
8. Plan for whole/frozen blood requirements and distribution.
9. Medical communications requirements.
10. Sanitation and preventive medicine.
11. MSSG surgeon supervision of care delivered by corpsmen.
12. Procedures for reporting friendly casualties.
13. Procedures for POW casualties (intelligence, security, etc.).
14. Procedures for sick, injured, or wounded civilians.
15. Plan for emergency retrograde.
16. Provisions for NBC warfare.
17. Predeployment medical checklist to ensure unit readiness.

TASK: 7A.4.13 PLAN CSSE DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEU has been tasked to conduct an amphibious landing and faces potential threat from aircraft, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks the CSSE has begun detailed planning. Elements of the CSSE will establish themselves ashore. The civilian population, while largely pro U.S., have been sympathetic to some of the enemy propaganda. The populace is inhabiting the immediate beach area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Determines which CSSE elements are displacing ashore, the numbers of troops, equipment and supplies involved, and the overall area where defense is required.
- .2_____ Requests intelligence and information on the enemy, civilian populace located in the beach area.
- .3_____ Conducts a map reconnaissance to identify possible locations of CSS units by using maps serial photography, or other special topographic products.
- .4_____ Arranges for a reconnaissance of the area if the situation permits.
- .5_____ Reviews rules of engagement to ensure the security of friendly forces.
- .6_____ Identifies the types and numbers of organic weapons available based on the troops and equipment to be displaced ashore, and determines their availability based on their schedule to be displaced ashore.
- .7_____ Verifies the planned location of all CSSE units to be landed and facilities to be established.
- .8_____ Conducts a terrain analysis based on KOCOAs to assist in identifying defensive requirements.
- .9_____ Ensures active and passive defensive measures are integrated into the plan for defense.
- .10_____ Plans passive defensive measures including dispersal, camouflage, hardening positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
- .11_____ Considers the use of deceptive measures such as dummy positions, concealed cargo, disinformation, etc.
- .12_____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support on call.
- .13_____ Plans local security measures which provide for Early warning, continual observation, counter reconnaissance screening, to include patrolling, OP's, LP's, and other local security techniques.
- .14_____ Coordinates with the GCE to determine their scheme of maneuver, planned MSR and alternate routes, and the planned location of their rear area units to integrate defenses where possible, and identify additional defensive requirements.
- .15_____ Requests antiarmor and air defense augmentation to cover avenues of approach that remain unguarded.
- .16_____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
- .17_____ Coordinates the positioning of LAAD assets in depth within those areas occupied by the CSSE.
- .18_____ Plans a security reaction force, and procedures to notify and transport them.
- .19_____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .20_____ Plans a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop movement of enemy forces.
- .21_____ Makes maximum use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.

- .22____ Plans procedures, based on CSSE SOP, to be used in planning, briefing, preparation, and control over defensive activities.
- .23____ Plans for the personnel and equipment required for a 24-hour operations center to coordinate defensive activities.
- .24____ Plans access procedures and ensures the movement of civilians in and around facilities are restricted and controlled. (See Task: 7A.4.16 PLAN HP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL.)
- .25____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate logistics units to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, and required MOPP conditions based on MEU guidance.
- .26____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of separated units, mass casualties, etc.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.14 PLAN MILITARY POLICE (MP) SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): A MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed MP support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N; NE

- .1____ Requests intelligence and combat information on the enemy, perceived threat in the rear areas, area of operations, and weather.
- .2____ Requests special topographic products which show the road and rail networks, population centers, dams, power plants, hospitals, etc.
- .3____ Provides MP input into the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .4____ Identifies requirements for battlefield circulation control, security, POW control, and law and order (See Task: 7A.4.1B PLAN FOR PRISONER OF WAR CONTROL.)
- .5____ Participates in the development of MSR regulations.
- .6____ Uses procedures contained in the unit SOP in the development of MP input for CSSE plans and order.
- .7____ Determines the availability of host nation support to reduce MP requirements.
- .8____ Determines, based on the rules of engagement and the degree of control authorized the CSSE commander, the means and methods to prevent interference with military operations.
- .9____ Determines the MP communication requirements and coordinates directly with the CSSE CEO.
- .10____ Identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 7A.4.15 PLAN HP SUPPORT FOR BATTLEFIELD CIRCULATION CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The MEU is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted, and continues detailed planning of MP support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Participates in the development of the traffic circulation plan, and coordinates the identification of military route numbers, directions of travel, lightlines and black-out signs, classification of routes, and the location of MP traffic control points.
- .2____ Performs a map reconnaissance to identify restricting terrain, bridges, population centers, and other critical features located along MSR's and alternate routes which could require control measures to ensure smooth and efficient use of the road network.
- .3____ Participates in the development of convoy procedures to ensure movements of vehicles are coordinated, programmed, and monitored from their points of origin to their final destination; e.g., march routes both primary and alternate, size of convoy, communications frequencies, MP support requirements, etc.
- .4____ Recommends the establishment of static MP positions such as control points, roadblocks, and checkpoints at critical locations.
- .5____ Develops a schedule of MP mobile patrols along MSR's and alternate routes to report on the flow of traffic, effects of weather on the route, changes to the route, signs of enemy activity, and enforcement of the control classification and control measures.
- .6____ Schedules MP patrols to reconnoiter additional routes to verify the type and number of routes that are available, load classification, route widths, obstructions, and restrictions to support future plans.
- .7____ Identifies aerial support requirements to reconnoiter areas, report on traffic conditions, etc.
- .8____ Ensures provisions are made to provide the MP's with a limited night visibility as well as a cross country capability.
- .9____ Coordinates procedures for handling refugees to prevent them from clogging MSR's and other critical routes.
- .10____ Coordinates the distribution of directives/orders relating to battlefield circulation control.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.16 PLAN MP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL

CONDITION(S): The CSSE has been alerted to the requirement for an amphibious assault and is continuing detailed MP support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Identifies those facilities requiring MP security support.
- .2____ Determines the MP manning requirements.
- .3____ Identifies any personnel and equipment augmentation Early in the planning.
- .4____ Coordinates access procedures, and ensures the movement of civilians in and around the facilities is restricted and controlled. (KI)

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-90

- .5_____ Coordinates the establishment of barriers, obstacles, and fortified positions.
- .6_____ Plan for the use of wire communications.
- .7_____ Coordinates a plan for a reaction force capability.
- .8_____ Identifies any requirement to provide personal security to VIP's
- .9_____ Ensures that those Marines assigned to personnel security details are specially trained, well briefed, and equipped with covered communication equipment to coordinate the security missions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESTRICTED ACCESS

Restriction and control of defensive area entry and exit procedures are to be rigidly enforced. A system which allows thorough screening and the protection of U.S. personnel and equipment is planned. This system is there-tiered at a minimum. The first tier consists of signs which indicate who may enter, and posts the rate of speed for vehicles approaching the checkpoint. The second tier, the trigger position, is where searches are conducted as well as identification is checkpoint. The third tier is where weapons capable of destroying incoming vehicles are located; e.g., AT-4, MK-15, SMAW, and .50 cal machinegun. Special orders for each post are established, and accordingly the last tier has the well defined mission to destroy, immediately, any vehicle passing the checkpoint without proper authorization.

TASK: 7A.4.17 CONDUCT LAD ENFORCEMENT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The CSSE has been alerted to a requirement for an amphibious assault and has begun detailed law enforcement planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Coordinates directly with local forces, upon MEU approval, to develop procedures to control the civilian population.
- .2_____ Develops crime prevention programs; i.e., sale of illicit drugs, black-market operation, theft and pilferage, etc.
- .3_____ Ensures a criminal investigation capability is provided to include the investigation of offenses against U.S. forces or property, and violations of the law of war (war crimes).
- .4_____ Advises commanders on potential criminal activities, and recommends control measures and resource requirements to carry them out.
- .5_____ Recommends a command policy on the detention of U.S. military prisoners and coordinates provisions for the implementation of this policy.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.18 PLAN FOR CONTROL OF PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing by elements of the MEU. The CSSE is currently in transit. The CSSE has been alerted and has begun detailed POW planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Estimates the anticipated POW capture and civilian internee (CI) rate in coordination with the operational planners.
- .2____ Integrates the plan for collecting POW's with the GCE's ground scheme of maneuver.
- .3____ Identifies interpreter requirements.
- .4____ Based on the anticipated POW/CI numbers, coordinates the development of food, mater, class IV, and transportation requirements.
- .5____ Ensures the definition of CI's are established, easily understood, and promulgated.
- .6____ Identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements.
- .7____ Plans crowd control procedures to include the provision for public address equipment and riot control agents.
- .8____ Prepares and schedules instruction to Marines on the provisions of international agreements and regulations relating to POW's/CI's.
- .9____ Establishes the procedures to segregate POW's/CI's by sex and type; i.e., officers, NCO's, nonrated, civilian combatants, etc., and ensure accountability.
- .10____ Ensures provisions are made to return personal items, protective clothes and protective equipment to the POW's/CI's.
- .11____ Coordinates transportation support to provide for the speedy movement of POW's/CI's to minimize the time prior to processing.
- .12____ Ensures procedures are specified to safeguard POW's/ CI's from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
- .13____ Coordinates with ITT personnel to ensure provisions are made to allow for the opportunity to interrogate POW's/CI's.
- .14____ Coordinates medical care and evacuation procedures established to ensure enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
- .15____ Coordinates the location and establishment of temporary POW/CI internment facilities/holding areas.
- .16____ Ensures provisions for the application of force in quelling riots and other disturbances are per the Geneva Convention.
- .17____ Ensures procedures for the establishment of a screening board to determine the status of persons who commit belligerent commits, and procedures for handling persons determined not to be POW's.
- .18____ Minimizes field processing requirements for POW by using personnel record forms, and establishes procedures for their use.
- .19____ Coordinates procedures to be used in turning over POW's/CI's to designated units as soon as possible after initial classification and administrative processing.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-92

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

SEARCHING

POW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons, equipment, and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture unless the number of POW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment. POW's should be tagged for identification and later matched with any documents equipment found, and should be instructed not to talk to other POW's to prevent collaboration of stories.

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.), clothing, and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A captured document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents which appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from a POW upon capture. When such documents are taken from a POW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual POW from whom it was taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the POW from whom it was taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of a POW be taken.

PERSONAL EFFECTS

Except as indicated below, POW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money, valuables, protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; and badges of grade and nationality. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from POW's as a security measure, they must be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of POW's first requires that individual POW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of POW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate POW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex. Evacuate POW's to collection points underguard as soon as possible. Rapid initial processing will contribute to the timeliness of interrogation.

MEDICAL CARE

POW's are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any difference in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

TASK: 7A.4.19 CONDUCT CIVIL AFFAIRS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MEU has been alerted of a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEU commander has placed Civil Affairs under the staff cognizance of the command element S-3, and has further designated the CSSE to provide assistance in the implementation of CA activities. The CSSE has been alerted, and has begun detailed civil affairs planning in coordination with the command element.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Requests all available information on the area to include information on cultural differences, customs, traditions, national and religious observances, sacred or forbidden places, and similar sensitive considerations from the MEU S-2/3.
- .2_____ Requests information concerning the attitude of the populace toward U.S. forces train the MEU S-2/3.
- .3_____ Receives intelligence and information on the current situation with emphasis on the effect of combat on the population in the area.
- .4_____ Reviews treaties or other agreements which address the relationship between military forces and the local government and civilians.
- .5_____ Receives input to the CSSE estimate of supportability concentrating on the estimated extent of civilian interference (e.g., refugees, demonstrators, and by standers), the control/security measures necessary to minimize interference and protect civilians, and the provision for any emergency food, clothing, housing, and medical requirements from the command element.
- .6_____ Provides input in the development of civil affairs policy to the MEU S-3.
- .7_____ Recommends civil affairs activities to be integrated with the planned scheme of maneuver.
- .8_____ Provides representation for the conduct of liaison with host Government military and civilian authorities Early in the planning, if the situation allows.
- .9_____ Assists in commercial activities to include the contracting of civilian labor and equipment such as vehicles, construction equipment and supplies, and material handling equipment.
- .10_____ Provides input to the refugee and displaced persons program to include CSSE manpower, equipment, and supplies required.
- .11_____ Conducts and maintains liaison with all other organizations involved in civil affairs activities, to include agencies of the U.S., indigenous, and third countries when directed by the command element.
- .12_____ Assists in the identification of buildings, areas, etc., that require special security; e.g., local government records offices.
- .13_____ Coordinates with the LF surgeon for the procedures to be used in the medical treatment and evacuation of injured, sick, or wounded civilians.
- .14_____ Assists in implementing procedures for the handling of claims against the United States.
- .15_____ Provides civil affairs reports as directed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.20 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS REHEARSAL

CONDITION(S): The CSSE has completed their initial planning and is en route to the objective area. The MEU has scheduled an integrated rehearsal prior to arriving in the objective area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Briefs overall communications plan, schedule of events, and COMSEC procedures to all staff members.
- .2 ____ Ensures the rehearsal plan tests the supportability of the communications plan.
- .3 ____ Installs communications based on established priorities.
- .4 ____ Tests the adequacy of planned aerial retransmission, if required.
- .5 ____ Ensures the compatibility of COMSEC means.
- .6 ____ Conducts operational checks of shipboards transceivers.
- .7 ____ Establishes communications with the TACLOG.
- .8 ____ Ensures adequacy of shipboard communications plans.
- .9 ____ Establishes communications for subordinate elements.
- .10 ____ Verifies each circuit for quality and reliability.
- .11 ____ Identifies interference problems and reports them immediately.
- .12 ____ Verifies COMSEC procedures.
- .13 ____ Evaluates radio operator proficiency.
- .14 ____ Follows correct message handling procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.21 OPERATE A LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEU are conducting tactical operations ashore. The CSSE is transitioning ashore and is providing CSS support to the GCE, as well as the CE and the ACE, who are still aboard ATF shipping.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 ____ Provides and monitors CSS operations on a 24-hour basis.
- .2 ____ Demonstrates the ability to handle CSS functions, both routine and emergency, in a timely and responsive manner.
- .3 ____ Staffs the operations center to ensure each commodity section is represented.
- .4 ____ Validates, on a daily basis, preplanned support requests with both commodity and supported unit representatives.
- .5 ____ Maintains current asset status information and maintains information on parts requirements.

- .6____ Controls the movement of CSS personnel and assets outside the BSA, and maintains information concerning their movement.
- .7____ Coordinates requests for contact teams and monitors the requests to ensure support is provided.
- .8____ Coordinates BSA defensive operations to include beachfront security as well as internal security operations.
- .9____ Receives daily forecasts for fuel from subordinates, and maintains an accurate stock level.
- .10____ Receives daily forecasts of requirements, and schedules the production and delivery of water.
- .11____ Submits detailed assault support requests (ASR's) or other requests for air support in a timely manner.
- .12____ Schedules and coordinates the movement of supplies, personnel, and equipment.
- .13____ Develops contingency plans to provide required CSS support to include mass casualties and the rapid movement of personnel, supplies, and/or equipment.
- .14____ Reviews, revises, and updates CSS plans to facilitate planned future operations.
- .15____ Maintains a chronological report of all significant events that occur.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.22 CONDUCT COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEU are conducting tactical operations ashore. The CSSE is transitioning ashore and is providing CSS support to the GCE, as well as to the CE and the ACE, who are still aboard ATF shipping.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Schedules work effort based on the commander's priority system.
- .2____ Utilizes all sources of supply to include host nation, interservice, open purchase, etc., effectively to provide timely, responsive, and required support.
- .3____ Takes advantage of available host country labor support; e.g., service corps.
- .4____ Ensures landing support operations are efficiently organized, scheduled, and coordinated.
- .5____ Deployed automated data processing support functions demonstrate the ability to pass, transmit and receive requests as well as get status of requests.
- .6____ Maintains communications with those organizations and agencies providing support to coordinate the priority shipment of parts, supplies, equipment, etc.
- .7____ Places continued emphasis on preventive maintenance measures.
- .8____ Specifies measures to be taken to overcome environmental conditions; e.g., corrosion control, engine flare-up time, exercising of equipment, winterization, etc.
- .9____ BSA layout allows controlled access, provides for an efficient circulation plan, and ensures the safety, health, and security of CSS personnel.
- .10____ Controls the allocation of night vision goggles (NVG's) to allow equipment operators and drivers to operate on a 24-hour basis.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-96

.11____ Schedules triage drills on a routine basis.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.23 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2____ Selects and correctly employs the proper antenna to include any field expedients required.
- .3____ Follows correct safety techniques.
- .4____ Follows proper grounding procedures.
- .5____ Demonstrates lost communications procedures, and implements alternate means of communications.
- .6____ Employs circuit profile techniques.
- .7____ Employs radio aerial or ground retransmission sites, as required.
- .8____ Demonstrates effective equipment power management to ensure reliable communications.
- .9____ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .10____ Employs COMSEC equipment properly, and operators use correct COMSEC procedures.
- .11____ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment employment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.24 EMPLOY ECCM

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations. The enemy has used EW capabilities in the theater of operation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Uses terrain masking techniques where practical.
- .2____ Uses only authorized brevity codes/prowords.
- .3____ Correctly uses authentication/numerical encryption.
- .4____ Radio operators continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness, and send messages by alternate means, if available.
- .5____ Radios are remotored to the maximum extent practical to protect the location of the operators.

- .6___ Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
- .7___ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
- .8___ Adheres to EMCON conditions.
- .9___ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10___ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope of the hill (away from the enemy) when practicable.
- .11___ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12___ Reports meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) per the forgets and procedures designated in the operations order.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.25 PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations. Communications center and switching stations have been established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Compiles and utilizes communication access lists.
- .2___ Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
- .3___ Adheres to current correctives applicable to CMS materials.
- .4___ Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces are in plan.
- .5___ Possesses an EAP appropriate to the threat intelligence.
- .6___ Personnel are knowledgeable of EAP destruction procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4 26 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations. Communications control facilities have been established to ensure conductivity.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Establishes communication control procedures.
- .2___ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3___ Maintains circuit status.
- .4___ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5___ Receives and prepares communications status reports, as required.
- .6___ Maintains effective systems control and technical control procedures based on command element priorities.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7A.4.27 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations. The tactical situation allows telephone networks to be established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Develops a telephone plan which identifies subscribers, priority of restoration, category of service, etc.
- .2___ Telephone plan meets the operational requirements.
- .3___ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for a back-up system.
- .4___ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities, if available.
- .5___ Installs telephone system according to established priorities.
- .6___ Updates telephone system as changes occur.
- .7___ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .8___ Organizes effective system control and technical control.
- .9___ Identifies a back-up system capable of restoring essential services.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

MCO 3501.8A
19 JUN 91

TASK: 7A.4.28 EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, TAX, ETC.)

CONDITION(S): CSSE has deployed and is being established ashore for operations. Terminal equipment is being used to pass essential information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Connectivity between all planned terminal equipment exists.
- .2____ Correctly configures terminal and COMSEC equipment.
- .3____ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .4____ Follows proper grounding techniques.
- .5____ Meets environmental considerations.
- .6____ Establishes restoration procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-A-100

MCO 3501.8A
19 JUN 91

SECTION 7B
MARINE EXPEDITIONARY BRIGADE

ENCLOSURE (1)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>		<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION.....		VII-B-1
<u>MPS 7B.1 - MEB COMMAND ELEMENT</u>		
TASK 7B.1.1	CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING	VII-B-2
TASK 7B.1.2	DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	VII-B-5
TASK 7B.1.3	PLAN INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION	VII-B-7
TASK 7B.1.4	PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE	VII-B-8
TASK 7B.1.5	PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	VII-B-9
TASK 7B.1.6	DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	VII-B-10
TASK 7B.1.7	DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE	VII-B-11
TASK 7B.1.8	PLAN FIRE SUPPORT	VII-B-11
TASK 7B.1.9	DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT	VII-B-14
TASK 7B.1.10	CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION	VII-B-15
TASK 7B.1.11	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY	VII-B-15
TASK 7B.1.12	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS INTEROPERABILITY	VII-B-16
TASK 7B.1.13	PLAN FOR CSS/LOGISTICS	VII-B-17
TASK 7B.1.14	(G,M) PLAN FOR TRANSITION FROM DEPLOYMENT TO EMPLOYMENT	VII-B-19
TASK 7B.1.15	(A) PLAN THE LANDING	VII-B-20
TASK 7B.1.16	PLAN FOR SECURITY	VII-B-21
TASK 7B.1.17	PLAN FOR CIVIL AFFAIRS	VII-B-22
TASK 7B.1.18	PLAN FOR PUBLIC AFFAIRS	VII-B-23
TASK 7B.1.19	PLAN FOR PRISONERS OF WAR	VII-B-24
TASK 7B.1.20	PLAN TACTICAL DECEPTION	VII-B-25
TASK 7B.1.21	(M) MARSHAL AND MOVE THE MEB	VII-B-27
TASK 7B.1.22	(A) PREPARE FOR LANDING DURING SEA TRANSIT	VII-B-27
TASK 7B.1.23	(H) ARRIVE AJ THE AAA AND ASSEMBLE THE MEB	VII-B-28
TASK 7B.1.24	(A) PLAN THE REHEARSAL	VII-B-29
TASK 7B.1.25	PREPARE TO COMMUNICATE	VII-B-30
TASK 7B.1.26	PREPARE TACTICAL DECEPTION PLAN	VII-B-30
TASK 7B.1.27	EXECUTE TACTICAL DECEPTION	VII-B-31
TASK 7B.1.28	ARRIVE IN OBJECTIVE AREA	VII-B-32
TASK 7B.1.29	(A) LAND THE LANDING FORCE	VII-B-32
TASK 7B.1.30	TRANSITION FROM DEPLOYMENT TO EMPLOYMENT	VII-B-33
TASK 7B.1.31	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION	VII-B-33

TASK 7B.1.32	.....	VII-B-34
	(A) CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE	
TASK 7B.1.33	.....	VII-B-35
	EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	
TASK 7B.1.34	.....	VII-B-35
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	
TASK 7B.1.35	.....	VII-B-36
	EMPLOY ELECTRONIC COUNTER COUNTERMEASURES (ECCM)	
TASK 7B.1.36	.....	VII-B-37
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7B.1.37	.....	VII B-37
	CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE	
TASK 7B.1.38	.....	VII-B-38
	OPERATE A COMMAND POST	
TASK 7B.1.39	.....	VII-B-39
	ORGANIZE THE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER	
TASK 7B.1.40	.....	VII-B-40
	PREPARE FOR COMPOSITING OF THE MEB	

MPS 7B.2 - GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)

TASK 7B.2.1	.....	VII-B-41
	CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7B.2.2	.....	VII-B-43
	DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	
TASK 7B.2.3	.....	VII-B-45
	PLAN INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	
TASK 7B.2.4	.....	VII-B-45
	PROCESS AND DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	
TASK 7B.2.5	.....	VII-B-46
	PLAN FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.2.6	.....	VII-B-48
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT OPERATIONS	
TASK 7B.2.7	.....	VII-B-49
	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.2.8	.....	VII-B-50
	DEVELOP TARGETS AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE	
TASK 7B.2.9	.....	VII-B-51
	PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.2.10	.....	VII-B-51
	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS	
TASK 7B.2.11	.....	VII-B-53
	PLAN SECURITY	
TASK 7B.2.12	.....	VII-B-54
	PLAN FOR CSS/LOGISTICS	
TASK 7B.2.13	.....	VII-B-55
	PLAN COMBAT ENGINEER SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.2.14	.....	VII-B-56
	(A) PLAN THE LANDING	
TASK 7B.2.15	.....	VII-B-57
	(A) LAND THE LANDING FORCE	
TASK 7B.2.16	.....	VII-B-58
	CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION	
TASK 7B.2.17	.....	VII-B-60
	OPERATE A COMMAND POST	
TASK 7B.2.18	.....	VII-B-62
	EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	
TASK 7B.2.19	.....	VII-B-62
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	
TASK 7B.2.20	.....	VII-B-63
	EMPLOY ECCM	
TASK 7B.2.21	.....	VII-B-64
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7B.2.22	.....	VII-B-64
	PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES	
TASK 7B.2.23	.....	VII-B-65
	EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX, ETC.)	

TASK 7B.2.24	.....	VII-B-65
	CONTROL OPERATIONS	
TASK 7B.2.25	.....	VII-B-66
	ORGANIZE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER	
TASK 7B.2.26	.....	VII-B-67
	CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE	
TASK 7B.2.27	.....	VII-B-67
	(A) CONTROL WITHDRAWAL SEAWARD	

MPS 7B.3 - AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)

TASK 7B.3.1	.....	VII-B-68
	CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL ACE STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7B.3.2	.....	VII-B-71
	DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	
TASK 7B.3.3	.....	VII-B-73
	PROCESS AND DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION	
TASK 7B.3.4	.....	VII-B-73
	PLAN ACE LOGISTICS	
TASK 7B.3.5	.....	VII-B-75
	PLAN AVIATION COMMAND AND CONTROL	
TASK 7B.3.6	.....	VII-B-76
	PLAN ANTIAIR WARFARE	
TASK 7B.3.7	.....	VII-B-78
	PLAN ASSAULT SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.3.8	.....	VII-B-79
	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS	
TASK 7B.3.9	.....	VII-B-80
	EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	
TASK 7B.3.10	.....	VII-B-81
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	
TASK 7B.3.11	.....	VII-B-82
	EMPLOY ECCM	
TASK 7B.3.12	.....	VII-B-82
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7B.3.13	.....	VII-B-83
	PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES	
TASK 7B.3.14	.....	VII-B-83
	EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX ETC.)	
TASK 7B.3.15	.....	VII-B-84
	PLAN SECURITY	
TASK 7B.3.16	.....	VII-8-85
	CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE	
TASK 7B.3.17	.....	VII-B-87
	CONDUCT OFFENSIVE AIR SUPPORT (OAS)	
TASK 7B.3.18	.....	VII-B-88
	CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE	
TASK 7B.3.19	.....	VII-B-89
	CONDUCT ACE BRIEFING	
TASK 7B.3.2D	.....	VII-B-90
	CONTROL ACE OPERATIONS/EXECUTION	
TASK 7B.3.21	.....	VII-B-92
	CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE	

MPS 7B.4 - COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)

TASK 7B.4.1	.....	VII-B-92
	CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING	
TASK 7B.4.2	.....	VII-B-94
	DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT	
TASK 7B.4.3	.....	VII-B-95
	DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.4	.....	VII-B-96
	CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION	
TASK 7B.4.5	.....	VII-B-97
	PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY	
TASK 7B.4.6	.....	VII-B-97
	PLAN FOR SUPPLY	

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK 7B.4.7	.....	VII-B-98
	PLAN MAINTENANCE SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.8	.....	VII-B-99
	PLAN MOTOR TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.9	.....	VII-B-100
	PLAN LANDING SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.10	.....	VII-B-102
	PLAN DELIBERATE ENGINEER SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.11	.....	VII-B-103
	PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS	
TASK 7B.4.12	.....	VII-B-104
	PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES	
TASK 7B.4.13	.....	VII-B-107
	PLAN SECURITY	
TASK 7B.4.14	.....	VII-B-108
	PLAN BSSG DEFENSE	
TASK 7B.4.15	.....	VII-B-109
	PLAN MILITARY POLICE (MP) SUPPORT	
TASK 7B.4.16	.....	VII-B-110
	PLAN MP SUPPORT FOR BATTLEFIELD CIRCULATION CONTROL	
TASK 7B.4.17	.....	VII-B-111
	PLAN MP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL	
TASK 7B.4.18	.....	VII-B-111
	PLAN LAW ENFORCEMENT AND ORDER OPERATIONS	
TASK 7B.4.19	.....	VII-B-112
	PLAN FOR PRISONER OF WAR CONTROL	
TASK 7B.4.20	.....	VII-B-114
	PLAN CIVIL AFFAIRS	
TASK 7B.4.21	.....	VII-B-115
	CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE	
TASK 7B.4.22	.....	VII-B-115
	REHEARSE COMMUNICATIONS	
TASK 7B.4.23	.....	VII-B-116
	OPERATE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER	
TASK 7B.4.24	.....	VII-B-117
	CONDUCT COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS	
TASK 7B.4.25	.....	VII-B-117
	EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT	
TASK 7B.4.26	.....	VII-B-118
	EMPLOY ECCM	
TASK 7B.4.27	.....	VII-B-119
	PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES	
TASK 7B.4.28	.....	VII-B-119
	CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL	
TASK 7B.4.29	.....	VII-B-120
	EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING	
TASK 7B.4.30	.....	VII-B-120
	EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX ETC.)	

INTRODUCTION:

This portion of the Marine Corps Combat Readiness Evaluation System (MCCRES) contains Mission Perform Standard (MPS's) that evaluate planning, preparation, and execution of tactical tasks performed by the elements internal to the Marine Expeditionary Brigade (MEB); i.e., MEB command element, ground combat element, (GCE), aviation combat element (ACE), and combat service support element (CSSE). The MEB command element provides centralized control and coordination of an operation as well as establishing liaison with senior and supporting staffs from other services.

The composition of MAGTF elements will differ with the variety of missions and forces assigned. The MPS's have been prepared to encompass the majority of those missions that an MEB command element will likely encounter in combat. The MPS's for the GCE, ACE, and CSSE are organized in the same manner.

The MEB may be embarked aboard amphibious shipping (A), it may be configured as a geographic propositioned MEB (G), or it may be assigned as a maritime propositioned force MEB (M). The Level 4 MCCRES tasks listed herein will pertain to all MEB scenarios. Those tasks preceded by the letter(s) A, G, or M apply only to those configurations.

A related aspect of an MEB evaluation is the degree of participation by the Commander Maritime Prepositioned Force/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CMPF/CATF) staff. If the CMPF/CATF and his staff do not participate to the degree envisioned in joint service doctrine, many of the tasks and standards rotating to the various aspects of planning cannot be completely accomplished by the MEB regardless of the amount of effort expended. Evaluators faced with this situation should use the "Not Applicable" notation and make comment for the TECG in the comments column of the MPS's.

Commanders should use MCCRES standards to establish subordinate unit training goals and informally evaluate their units. The MCCRES system provides a means to evaluate current combat readiness and training, identify strengths and weaknesses, and prioritize training requirements.

Of particular importance in the use of the MPS's contained in this volume is that many of the planning and coordination functions described in the tasks and standards can occur alone or simultaneously. The effective use of these MPS's requires the evaluator to retain sufficient flexibility to examine various activities prior to arriving at conclusions.

MCCRES elements contained in this volume assume that personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards. It is acknowledged that sufficient personnel and logistical support are not always available. The standards are written in order to conduct an evaluation. A unit is not penalized if they cannot attempt all the standards. When other external factors contribute to limiting the MEB's combat readiness, it should be pointed out in the cover letter of the MCCRES Evaluation Scoresheet and recorded in the overall evaluation.

The command element (CE) is a permanent organization. It is composed of the commander and supporting staff. It provides the command, control, and coordination essential for effective planning and execution of operations. It also contains the long-range reconnaissance, intelligence, and electronic warfare (EW) capabilities derived from units resident within the surveillance, reconnaissance, and intelligence (SRI) group.

The ground combat element (GCE) conducts ground operations. It is usually constructed around a reinforced infantry regiment. The GCE also includes appropriate combat support and combat service support units.

The aviation combat element (ACE) provides aviation support. Support is based on the tactical situation and the MEB's mission. The ACE is usually constructed around a reinforced aircraft group. The ACE plays a key role in combined arms. Coordination between GCE and ACE is achieved through air sections organic to all GCE units and by the Marine air command and control system (MACCS).

The combat service support element (CSSE) provides a full range of combat service support necessary to accomplish a MEB's mission. It is organized to provide supply, maintenance, transportation, deliberate engineering, medical and dental, automated information systems, exchange, utilities, legal, landing support(port/airfield support operations), disbursing, prisoner of war, and graves registration services.

Submit recommended changes to this volume to the Commanding General, Marine Corps Combat Development Command (MCCDC), (TE 31), Quantico, VA 22134-5050. Each recommended change should cite the specific item, volume, page, paragraph, and line of text, as appropriate, and should include comments and recommendations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

7B.1 MEB COMMAND ELEMENT

TASK: 7B.1.1 CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political/military situation that requires an amphibious operation/deployment and marry-up with equipment by subordinate elements. The MEB is currently in transit or awaiting dedicated and transportation. Receipt of the initiating directive is pending. A carrier battle group (CVBG) is also enroute. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW capabilities, and multidiscipline human intelligence (HUMINT), imagery intelligence (IMINT), and signals intelligence (SIGINT) collection capabilities. The duration of possible operations is unknown. The command element (CE) has received an initial brief, and has been requested to provide input to the initiating directive.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (G,M) Reviews MEB contingency time phased force deployment list (TPFDL) airlift plans for notional task organization.
- .2____ (G,M) Develops, as appropriate, data on prospective arrival and assembly areas (AAA) to include: port; beach; airfield; airfield facilities; roads; local communications; water; power; storage area; and prospective host nation information.
- .3____ (G,M) Plans for the coordinated arrival and assembly operations within contingency AAA's by refining a generic plan for the timely off-load and issuance of maritime propositioned equipment and supplies (MPE/S).
- .4____ (G,M) Plans for the coordination and control, to include time phasing, over the maritime propositioning force/geographical propositioning force (MPF/GPF) fly-in echelon (FIE), an assault follow-on echelon (AFOE), an aviation logistics support ship (TAVB), a hospital ship (TAH), and ultimately the logistics pipeline.
- .5____ Provides MEB input for the drafting of the initiating directive.
- .6____ Develops preliminary staff estimates based on known facts and available intelligence prior to the receipt of the initiating directive and the initial planning conference.
- .7____ (G,M) Obtains Host Nation support requirements.
- .8____ Analyzes command relationships.
- .9____ Issues a warning order to the MEB's subordinate elements after acceptance of preliminary estimates.
- .10____ Determines intelligence requirements.
- .11____ Reviews essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and recent vulnerability assessments, and initiates immediate measures to reduce operational security (OPSEC) indicators.
- .12____ (A,M) Coordinates MEB's input to any requirement (AAV-8's, AH-1's, LAAD, crew-served weapons) for emergency defense of the amphibious task force/maritime propositioning force (ATF/MPF).
- .13____ (A) Coordinates with the ATF to request AEW (Airborne Early Warning) support from higher commands.
- .14____ (M) Provides recommendations to the CMPF/CATF on the conduct of MPF/ATF operations based upon an analysis of the mission in the initiating directive.
- .15____ Analyzes the mission in the initiating directive to identify specified and implied tasks. (KI)
- .16____ Prior to the initial planning conference, develops a proposed general course of action for discussion.
- .17____ Determines, in concert with the CATF, landing force objectives, the seizure of which ensures the accomplishment of the mission.
- .18____ (A) Prepares LF mission statement for joint CATF/CLF decision.
- .19____ (A) Receives LF mission statement concurrence, and CATF's designation of landing sites.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-2

- .20___ Issues initial planning guidance (IPG) to subordinate elements which addresses all aspects of the operation; ground, air, and CSS.
- .21___ (A) Gives preliminary consideration to the sea echelon concept and rehearsal schedule Early in planning.
- .22___ Gives preliminary consideration to advance force, subsidiary, deception, and supporting operations.
- .23___ Provides MEB input on the tentative selection of in-hour and D-day.
- .24___ Promulgates, upon receipt of the planning directive, a MEB planning directive or schedule.
- .25___ Selects a minimum number of mission/landing force objectives, based on METT-T, that complement the CINC/CATE objectives, ensure the accomplishment of the mission, and (A) provide sufficient depth to the force beachhead to protect the ATF objectives. Submits objectives to CATF for review.
- .26___ (A) Selects a proposed beachhead for each landing site simultaneously with the selection of LF objectives, and submits the proposal to CATF for review.
- .27___ (A) Evaluates the tentative landing areas, and selects with CATF's concurrence, primary and alternate landing areas.
- .28___ (A,M) Coordinates a decision brief for the CINC/CATF on specific landing beaches within the beachhead based on the recommendations of the GCE.
- .29___ Coordinates a decision brief by the GCE and ACE staff on proposed helicopter landing zone(s) (LZ's) to include approach and retirement lanes, and control measures.
- .30___ Coordinates a decision brief for the CINC/joint force commander on proposed drop zone(s) and LZ's during joint operations, to airdrop/airland forces and/or equipment and supplies.
- .31___ Promulgates MEB planning guidance which addresses all aspects of the operation; ground, air, and CSS, and (KI)
- .32___ MEB CE develops and briefs proposed courses of action.
- .33___ Coordinates the preparation of estimates of supportability (ground, air, CSS, and C3) based upon the proposed courses of action.
- .34___ Briefs command and staff estimates of supportability to the commander.
- .35___ Announces the commander's decision, and provides the overall concept of operations to subordinate elements.
- .36___ Prepares a written or graphic presentation of MEB's concept of operations ashore in broad outline, to include the task organization, and issues the concept as an outline plan. (KI)
- .37___ Receives the ACE and BSSG brief of the concept of CSS and ACE support.
- .38___ Ensures mission statements are developed for each subordinate element of the MEB.
- .39___ Monitors the GCE's development of a detailed scheme of maneuver, (A) landing plan, and plan of supporting fires.
- .40___ Coordinates the development of the operation plan with subordinate commanders and their staffs.
- .41___ Maintain close and continuous planning coordination with higher, adjacent, and supporting headquarters to include joint and combined commands.
- .42___ Develops the operation plan.
- .43___ Uses standardized procedures contained in the SOP's to develop plans.
- .44___ Coordinates all communication requirements for subordinate, adjacent, and higher level circuits to include frequencies, callsigns, satellite access requests, encryption hardware/software, and authentication materials. (See Task 7B.1.9: DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT.)

- .45____ Establishes review few procedures which provide for continual updating of aircraft, landing craft and major end .
- .46____ Arranges for command and staff reconnaissance, as the situation permits.
- .47____ Coordinates responsibilities for the conduct of civil affairs per the MEB's SOP.
- .48____ Requests public affairs (PA) guidance, and begins development of appropriate PA plans for inclusion in operation plan.
- .49____ Establishes NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate elements to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
- .50____ (A) Continuously reevaluates and updates decisions on advance force, deception, subsidiary, and supporting operations throughout the planning process.
- .51____ (A) En route to the amphibious objective area (AOA), and consolidates training and rehearsal plans for all elements of the MEB.
- .52____ Establishes and maintains liaison with intelligence organization of higher, adjacent, and supporting (HAS) headquarters to include joint and combined commands as well as with other U.S. Government (USG) and foreign government (FG) agencies, as appropriate.
- .53____ The G-3, G-6/CEO, and G-2 develop plans for providing intelligence and intelligence communications to HAS HQ include joint and combined commands, as appropriate.
- .54____ The G-3 and G-6/CEO, brief the concept of intelligence support to include intelligence communications for the MEB Commander's approval.
- .55____ (A) Coordinates and finalizes plans for advance force operations.
- .56____ (A) Ensures that force operations are conducted.
- .57____ Establishes crisis action planning organization/center for purpose of coordinating crisis action planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Preliminary mission statements will be provided to allow the MEB to commence planning.

KEY INDICATORS:

INITIAL ANALYSIS

The initial analysis includes, but is not limited to:

1. Obtaining all information available concerning the area of operations.
2. Analyzing the initiating directive.
3. Reviewing the adequacy and readiness of the forces assigned.
4. Developing tentative mission statements and a broad plan of action.
5. Determining staff requirements.
6. Issuing of IPG, policies, and commencement of concurrent planning.

PLANNING GUIDANCE

Guidance includes at least the following:

1. Restates the mission.

2. Commander's analysis of the overall mission, and intent.
3. Assumptions necessary because of lack of information.
4. Promulgation of previous decisions.
5. Commander's policies; e.g., rules of engagement (ROE), operational constraints affairs.
6. Broad courses of action.
7. General fire support plans to include employment of special weapons.

CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS

The development of the concept of operations begins as a general overview of how the mission is to be accomplished. This includes (A) an overall formation for landing, a general scheme of maneuver, principal. MEB objectives, a general task organization, fire support, (A) allocation of ship-to-shore landing means, plans for deception operations, (A) and plans for any subsidiary landings. As the subordinate team begin planning, the concept is refined and becomes more specific, approach and retirement lanes, (A) beach exits, and other critical actual operation. Factors that must be considered include:

1. Mission.
2. Characteristics of the AOA.
3. (A) ATF and LF objectives.
4. Enemy capabilities.
5. Forces available.
6. Airfields, LZ(s), air control sites, etc.
7. Plan for CSS.

(A,M) ATF EMERGENCY DEFENSE

MAGTF assets are not included in the planning for the routine defense of the ATF/MPF as that function is provided by their own weapons systems/CINC/host nation etc., preplanned CVBG cover, or land-based assets. In an emergency, landing force assets may be used as a final option for ATF defense when:

1. Increasing tensions, intelligence, or defense conditions indicate an attack is imminent, or the ATF/MPF is under actual attack.
2. The governing ROE permit the intercept or engagement of aircraft/boats of forces declared hostile.
3. Other circumstances or situations occur that an emergency exists.

TASK: 7B.1.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its employment. The MEB is awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is en route to the objective area. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multidisciplined (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities. (A) The MEB commander and CATF have agreed to form a Joint Intelligence Center (JIB). (G,M) MPS operations will normally preclude the formation of B JIB.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Request higher HQ's assistance in the elimination of information gaps in on-the-shelf intelligence products and data bases.
- .2____ Formulates basic requirements of EEI's and OIR's.
- .3____ Prepares for time critical special TENCAP/theater collection efforts.
- .4____ (G,M) Prepares to collect data on prospective AAA to include port, beach, airfield, airfield facilities, roads, local communications, water, poser, storage area, and prospective host nation information for which no operation plan exists.
- .5____ Upon receipt of the initiating directive, prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate (G,M) on the threat insofar as it impacts on the requirement for a secure area. (KI)
- .6____ (M) Determines, the location and characteristics of an adequate airfield for B-747/C-5/C-141 operations and throughput capability to support the intended airflow.
- .7____ (M) Determines, the location and characteristics of an adequate beach/port for timely offload, throughput, arrival and assembly.
- .8____ (M) Determines, with the assistance of supporting agencies, characteristics of the road network between the beach/port and the proximate airfield.
- .9____ (M) Determines, with the assistance of supporting agencies, prevailing weather conditions in the area to include visibility, winds, flying conditions, and astronomic data.
- .10____ Prepares a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance. (KI)
- .11____ Identifies, refines, and submits requirements for maps, charts, geodetic surveys (MC&G), imagery, photographs, and other graphic aids.
- .12____ Prepares/activates the MEB war reserve MC&G stock for delivery.
- .13____ Makes Early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .14____ Incorporates the orders for the collection of information into the intelligence annex of the operation order or as fragmentary orders.
- .15____ Requests information on the overhead times of applicable enemy satellite systems.
- .16____ Tasks the radio battalion detachment to integrate SIGINT, EW, and COMSEC during planning and throughout all phases of the operation. (See Task: 7B.1.4 PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE.)
- .17____ Publishes effective signs and countersigns (challenge and password).
- .18____ Develops and coordinates target intelligence activities as part of the overall targeting function.
- .19____ Prepares an intelligence annex that defines the manner in which the intelligence operations of the MEB will be conducted.
- .20____ Ensures intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the MEB SOP for intelligence.
- .21____ Obtains updates to the flint technical characteristics data base.
- .22____ Coordinates with intelligence assets external to the MAGTF.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of this preliminary estimate is to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to decisions and to assist him in IPG.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Intelligence estimation is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the initiating directive and continues throughout all phases of the planning process. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with the characteristics of the terrain in the objective area; anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected for the operation; (A) the location, characteristics and composition of available beaches; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy force in the objective area; and the location of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concern with the accomplishment of the four basic intelligence tasks:

1. Direction of the intelligence effort (continuous process).
2. Collection.
3. Processing information into intelligence.
4. Dissemination of intelligence.

The intelligence estimate is written if planning time allows, the subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice and are normally based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. These changes are incorporated into the basic written estimate as soon as possible.

TASK: 7B.1.3 PLAN INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in receipt of the initiating directive and has begun planning. (A) The ATF is en route to the AOA. A CVBG is also en route.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Develops a dynamic collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation.
- .2___ Provides intelligence, as required, to the MEB G-3 and staff judge advocate (SJA) to enable them to develop a list of civilian population centers and places protected by the law of war.
- .3___ Utilizes an intelligence collection worksheet to manage the collection effort.
- .4___ Develops a collection plan.
- .5___ Identifies reporting instructions; i.e., time constraints and to whom to report.
- .6___ Coordinates with collection agencies to provide for maximum lead time of requests and orders.
- .7___ Utilizes all organic collection assets as well as theater and national assets available to the MEB to support the intelligence collection effort.
- .8___ Utilizes all means available to update target intelligence on a continuing basis.
- .9___ Requests an estimate of the enemy's time lag in processing, developing, distributing, and acting upon their own overhead photography or satellite information.
- .10___ Identifies the procedures for requesting theater and national support.

- .11____ Requests external collection support and ensures communications are in place to review information/intelligence collected.
- .12____ Recommends EEI/OIR(s) based on input from STAFF/MCS's, the assigned mission, and guidance from the commander.
- .13____ Assigns a priority of effort to satisfy these requirements based on the situation and the MEB commander's guidance.
- .14____ Requests aerial imagery support from higher or adjacent commands.
- .15____ Phrases the commander's EEI's in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts: a positive directive; qualifying questions; and statement directing special attention.
- .16____ Uses the collection plan as a basis for issuing orders and requests to collection agencies.
- .17____ Assists higher, adjacent, and subordinate commanders in their collection efforts.
- .18____ Submits requests for intelligence to (A) the JIB, or via them to higher, adjacent, and supporting commands.
- .19____ Develops a reconnaissance and surveillance plan that includes sensor surveillance.
- .20____ Manages the collection effort continually to ensure that orders and requests are understood and fulfilled.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.4 PLAN SIGNALS INTELLIGENCE/ELECTRONIC WARFARE

CONDITION(S): The MEB has a radio battalion detachment assigned. The MEB has received an initiating directive. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire weapons, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW capabilities, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collections capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Conducts an analysis of the MEB mission, and initiates liaison with the SIGINT Plans Officer (SIO).
- .2____ Develops intelligence/information requirements on the vulnerability of enemy forces to ECM/ESM actions and the capability of enemy forces to conduct ECM/ESM against friendly forces.
- .3____ Recommends procedures to determine how to engage the enemy's C3 structure, and standards for decisions on whether to listen, jam, or destroy enemy activities.
- .4____ Identifies comm circuit requirements to CEO.
- .5____ Coordinates operational planners for the integration of SIGINT/EW efforts during all phases of the operation.
- .6____ Coordinates with the CEO, G-3, and Radio Battalion Detachment for COMSEC monitoring, analysis, reporting, and special intelligence communication support.
- .7____ Identifies special intelligence communications support requirements and assists with requests, as required.
- .8____ Recommends procedures to be used in coordinating electronic jamming to preclude interference with friendly C3.

- .9____ Submits communication requirements to include COMSEC materials to the CEO for connectivity and inclusion in the CEOI/comm plan, also coordinate any unique communications requirements needing external support.
- .10____ Coordinates cryptologic requirements with CINC/CATF/CMPF to ensure that LF cryptologic objectives are supported.
- .11____ Coordinates with G-4/CEO on specialized logistical requirements
- .12____ Plans for the personnel, equipment, and communications requirements necessary to support the activation of the S/EWCC. Advise the commander on whether to activate the S/EWCC or not.
- .13____ Identifies and recommends ECM targets to G-3/EWO.
- .14____ Prepares the SIGINT estimate.
- .15____ Prepares the EW estimate.
- .16____ Prepares the SIGINT Appendix.
- .17____ Prepares EW Appendix.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.5 PROCESS INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The MEB has published a collection plan and has begun to receive reports from the tasked elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison.
- .2____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .3____ Analyzes information to isolate significant elements with respect to the MEB mission and operations.
- .4____ Utilizes the staff counterintelligence officer to provide CI assessment of the operating area.
- .5____ Integrates the collected information with other outside sources (national/theater) to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities and intentions which might influence the mission of the MEB.
- .6____ Interprets information to determine significance, and forms logical conclusions which serve as the basis for determining the effects on the current intelligence estimate, and subsequent operations.
- .7____ Identifies potential enemy vulnerabilities which may be exploited by the MEB, adjacent or higher commands during future operations.
- .8____ Requests an estimate of the availability of enemy operations and the probable time lag in processing, developing, distributing, and acting upon that intelligence.
- .9____ Based on results of intelligence processing and analysis, adjusts intelligence collections plans.
- .10____ Establishes and adjusts priorities for processing categories of data when data volumes exceed the onsite capabilities to process and analyze incoming data.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.6 DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The MEB G-2 section has received reports from tasked elements and has processed the information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., time lines, useability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .2____ Determines form of presentation, and in coordination with the G-3 and CEO, selects the best means of transmission.
- .3____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent intelligence support to all elements of the MEB.
- .4____ Provides, in coordination With the G-3, input to the CINC/CATF target list after approval by the MEB commander.
- .5____ Coordinates with higher HQ's staff to ensure procedures are established to alert units to changing weather conditions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.7 DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE

CONDITION(S): The MEB has received an initiating directive, and commenced planning. A collection plan has been published and reports were received and processed. The MEB continues to plan for deployment and employment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares counterintelligence directives, plans, reports, and estimates.
- .2____ Plans, implements, and supervises all active and passive CI measures within the command.
- .3____ Coordinates CI measures, operations, and activities with loser, adjacent, and higher HQ's.
- .4____ Provides CI advice and input to contingency operations plans, including the operations security annex and operation plans for training exercises.
- .5____ Conducts planning for the intelligence and counterintelligence processing of friendly Prisoners of War (POW's) who have been returned to friendly control.
- .6____ Maintains CI reference material for contingency planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-10

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK 7B.1.8 PLAN FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that may require its employment. Higher HQ's has established a general policy as to the types of targets to be attacked by air and naval gunfire (NGF), and has established a Supporting Arms Coordination Center (SACC). The MEB commander's guidance and overall concept of operations has been received. The GCE's Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) will coordinate fires once established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Begins initial planning upon receipt of the warning order utilizing the factors of METT-T. (KI)
- .2____ Provides communication circuit requirements to CEO.
- .3____ (A) Maintains close and continuous liaison with the ATF, assigning appropriate fire support coordination personnel as watch standers in the SACC.
- .4____ Designates a fire support coordinator.
- .5____ Promulgates fire support control/coordination measures, based on ammunition and target restrictions, ROE, and any policies that impact on the employment of fire support, per the commander's planning guidance.
- .6____ (A,M) Considers the impact of any MEB units expanded on the emergency defense of the ATF/CMPF during the transit phase or at the AAA.
- .7____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to the MEB G-2, requesting intelligence/ combat information on the area of operations, enemy, and weather.
- .8____ Advises the G-2 on the capabilities of target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the intelligence collection effort.
- .9____ Disseminates, in a timely and continuous manner, that fire support planning information required and requested by the GCE, ACE, and CSSE.
- .10____ Establishes fire support coordination reports and procedures as stated in the published SOP.
- .11____ Uses targeting procedures per the MEB's SOP that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data.
- .12____ (A) Prepares targets for the CINC/ATF target list and forwards them to CATF/CINC/CJTF upon the MEB commander's approval.
- .13____ Establishes targeting priorities using the target value analysis system or a target precedence list.
- .14____ Reviews the initial estimate of fire support requirements developed by the GCE.
- .15____ Prepares an estimate of supportability, addressing those considerations that facilitate the integration of fire support within the MEB.
- .16____ Reviews the NGF, and artillery estimates of supportability produced by the GCE.
- .17____ (A) Tasks subordinate elements to assign fire support control personnel to accompany the advance force.
- .18____ (A,M) Submits preliminary plans for fire support based upon the MEB's concept of operations which identify air and NGF requirements to the CATF, and allows for a tentative allocation of aircraft and ships to occur.
- .19____ Reviews, and forwards deep air support targets to CINC/CATF after the commander approves priorities.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .20____ Reviews artillery requirements and submits them to MEB commander for a approval.
- .21____ Briefs the commander on any shortfalls, requests for additional fire support assets, and necessary adjustments to plans prior to consolidation of overall requirements.
- .22____ Monitors adjustments to preliminary plans in the event that a shortfall of fire support cannot be supported from either organic or outside sources.
- .23____ (A) Coordinates the concurrent development of air, NGF, and artillery fire support means by the FSAC and SACC.
- .24____ Coordinates With all higher, adjacent, and subordinate fire support planners.
- .25____ (A) Provides representatives to the target information section and provides target intelligence requirements to the JIB via the MEB G-2.
- .26____ Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's concept and priorities, and complement his proposed operations.
- .27____ Ensures a target list is prepared Which integrates lists of targets from subordinate elements and augments these targets with others whose destruction, neutralization, or suppression is considered vital to the mission.
- .28____ Coordinates With the TACC/SACC when afloat, and the DASC/FSAC if established ashore for aircraft ingress and egress routes for CAS and assault support missions to ensure concurrent use of airspace with other supporting arms.
- .29____ Maintains and disseminates a list of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the Law of war.
- .30____ Coordinates with ACE, and when afloat, ATF air planners to designate an aircraft ordnance jettison area.
- .31____ Submits the fire support plan to the commander for approval following consolidation of all input. (KI)
- .32____ (A) Following review and the commander's approval, submits detailed fire support plans for air and NGF to CATF as the LF's detailed air and NGF requirements.
- .33____ Publishes the LF fire support plan as separate supporting a appendixes to the operations annex of the operation order.
- .34____ Coordinates with the ACE and joint/combined agencies in the preparation of a pilot's/controller's handbook.
- .35____ Ensures an adequate number and type of liaison officers/representatives are planned for each phase of the operation.
- .36____ (A) Reviews prior planning again and conducts continuous fire support planning throughout the amphibious assault, and subsequent operations ashore.
- .37____ Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and up dated intelligence/combat information on the threat.
- .38____ In coordination With the G-2, plans for and ensures that Restrictive Fire Measures (RFM) are prepared in support of intelligence collection assets operating forward of the FEBA.
- .39____ Develops procedures for a rapid targeting response to intelligence on significant enemy targets.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

FACTORS OF METT-T

1. Mission/Commander's concept.
2. Enemy targets and fire support capabilities.
3. Troops/fire support assets available, target acquisition sources, and ammunition status.
4. Terrain and weather conditions.
5. Time available.

FIRE SUPPORT PLAN

This concept provides guidance in the following areas:

1. General targets or areas which are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver fires.
2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation as the point of the main effort.
3. Exclusive or exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or accomplishing a particular task.
4. Use of preparation fires and/or SEAD, and, the duration and intensity of such fires.
5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).
6. (A) For artillery, in general terms, the time and place of landing.

AIR AND NGF REQUIREMENTS

1. These requirements include, as appropriate, specific targets to be attacked, desired effect on targets, and the delivery means recommended; amounts of ammunition to be expended and schedules for delivery; and specific elements to be supported and the types of support required. The requirements are submitted with enough detail as to require only approval and implementation (A) by CATF.

REVIEW OF FIRE PLAN

The FSC reviews the air, artillery, NGF plans to ensure that:

1. The landing plan and scheme of maneuver ashore are fully supported.
2. All known or suspected targets capable of interfering with the mission or subsequent operations are scheduled for attack without unnecessary duplication.
3. There is neither unwarranted interference between supporting fires and tactical operations, nor among supporting arms with each other.
4. (A) Procedures are delineated for the shifting of coordination as the GCE's FSCC establishes itself ashore.
5. Procedures for passing damage assessments to higher and subordinate elements are established.

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 7B.1.9 DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its employment. The MEB is awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. The threat forces have EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (M) Prepares detailed generic communication plans for MPF and subsequent operations based upon known contingency plans.
- .2____ Conducts mission analysis and identifies communications implied tasks.
- .3____ Requests available communications related intelligence on the enemy, terrain, and weather from available sources; i.e., G-2, higher HQ's staff, etc.
- .4____ Reviews task organization and command relationships.
- .5____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability based on the MEB commander's proposed courses of action.
- .6____ Refines concept of communications support based on commander's guidance.
- .7____ Reviews the communications SOP, contingency plans, lessons learned, etc., for applicability.
- .8____ Prepares and publishes a communications plan. (KI)
- .9____ Demonstrates knowledge of all communications available; i.e., AUTODIN, AUTOVON, AUTOSEVOCOM, and DSSCS.
- .10____ Validates internal and external needlines for all phases of the operation.
- .11____ Identifies types of information and estimated volume to be exchanged; i.e., data, voice, facsimile, etc.
- .12____ Establishes prioritization of communication circuits.
- .13____ Employs circuit profile analysis techniques.
- .14____ Identifies critical low density communications end items and coordinates with the BSSG to determine critical low density repair items and general maintenance support.
- .15____ Reviews and monitors overall communication readiness of the MEB.
- .16____ Requests available communications related intelligence and information on host nation communications and its military forces communications from available sources, i.e., G-2, higher HQ's.
- .17____ Determines frequency requirements through coordination with MSE's.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COMMUNICATION PLAN

A communication plan is the culmination of communication concept development and as such will promulgate the operational concept from a communications-electronics viewpoint, provide the guiding principles necessary for coordination and publishing tasks, responsibilities, and special measures.

TASK: 7B.1.10 CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its employment. The CEO has commenced communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with the MEB staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support.
- .2____ Coordinates with communications personnel of adjacent/higher command elements to identify doctrinal and unique requirements, liaison requirements, and exchange information.
- .3____ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support requirements and assets available.
- .4____ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the planned communication system.
- .5____ Determines and provides for the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .6____ Determines and requests personnel and equipment augmentation (ATF/CMPF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy), if required.
- .7____ Identifies and requests external (ATF/CMPF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy) support; i.e., frequencies, telecommunications service requests (TSR's), communications guard shifts, AUTODIN access requirements, satellite access requests, etc.
- .8____ Submits frequency requests based on the use of frequency propagation analysis tools (previous experience, ECAC, Advanced Prophet, etc.).
- .9____ (A) Submits the MEB prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements to the ATF.
- .10____ Coordinates with the ACE and MEB FSC in the development of the communications portion of the pilots/controllers handbook.
- .11____ Establishes restoration priorities based on the commander's guidance.
- .12____ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communications plan.
- .13____ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, MHE, POL, berthing, etc., to the MEB G-4.
- .14____ Participates in embarkation planning to ensure spread loading, proper off loading, and (A) access to communications gear while embarked.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.11 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its employment. The MEB staff is actively involved during the initial stages of communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Determines transmission security requirements.
- .2___ Determines emissions security requirements.
- .3___ Determines cryptological security requirements.
- .4___ Determines physical security requirements.
- .5___ Compiles communications access lists, and publishes appropriate procedures.
- .6___ Ensures sufficient intertheater COMSEC package (ICP) for Combined/Joint operations are held and meets mission requirements.
- .7___ Develops and coordinates a COMSEC plan to include COMSEC monitoring.
- .8___ Ensures that subordinates possess the required keying materials and CMS equipment.
- .9___ Coordinates the control, acquisition, holding, storage, and distribution of COMSEC materials with the CMS custodian.
- .10___ Plans for adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces.
- .11___ Develops an emergency action plan (EAP) for use within the CEO Section when established ashore and/or afloat.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.12 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS INTEROPERABILITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its employment. Additional resources from theater and national assets will be made available to support MEB operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Preplanning conferences are hosted or attended to ensure the integration and coordination of efforts.
- .2___ Identifies unique communications requirements; i.e., equipment, format, procedures, etc., based on the specific command and control relationships established.
- .3___ (M) Activate communications to support command activities during each phase of the operation.
- .4___ Provides for voice, message, and/or data link exchanges between the MEB and external control agencies.
- .5___ Determines liaison requirements to include equipment, personnel, procedures, and communications.
- .6___ Identifies unique CMS considerations, such as NATO or allied forces interoperability requirements.
- .7___ Coordinates intertheater CMS contingency packages for subordinates to ensure equipment compatibility and adequacy of inventory.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.13 PLAN FOR CSS/LOGISTICS

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its employment. The MEB is awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. The MEB G-4 is coordinating the development of the MEB's concept of logistic support to include CSS for the GCE, ACE, and BSSG.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (G,M) Prepares detailed generic plans for marshalling and movement to port of embarkation.
- .2____ (G,M) Reviews MEB contingency airlift plans for notional task organization.
- .3____ (G,M) Develops data on prospective AAA to include port, beach, airfield, airfield facilities, roads, local communications, water, posser, storage area, and prospective host nation information.
- .4____ Plans for the integration of naval construction forces.
- .5____ (G,M) Plans for the coordinated arrival and assembly operations within contingency AAA's by developing a generic plan for the timely offload and issuance of maritime propositioned equipment and supplies (MPE/S).
- .6____ (G,M) Plans for the coordination and control, to include time phasing, over the MPF/GPF FIE, an AFOE, an TAVB, a TAH, and ultimately the logistics pipeline.
- .7____ Analyzes the mission to initiate identification of CSS requirements. (KI)
- .8____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .9____ Coordinates with the G-3 in the analysis of the proposed courses of action to determine the type units and rough numbers of troops who will be committed ashore, commanders priorities for support, LFORM, equipment densities, maintenance support available, distances involved, critical weapons systems, and the anticipated duration of the operation.
- .10____ Studies the G-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information on the area to determine climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, in country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals distances both inside and outside the objective area, supplies/stockpiles which may be available locally, etc.
- .11____ Prepares, in coordination with the BSSG, GCE, and ACE logistics planners, a detailed logistics estimate of supportability which compares all CSS related factors influencing each proposed tactical course of action; i.e., logistics requirements, availability of means, and identified shortfalls.
- .12____ (A) Establishes coordination with ATF agencies involved with logistic/CSS planning and operations.
- .13____ Reviews the BSSG personnel and equipment lists, with the BSSG, to ensure the organic BSSG is able to provide the required CSS support.
- .14____ Determines, in coordination with the BSSG, consumption factors for all classes of supply (to include ordnance) for the type operation being planned.
- .15____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to G-2 covering gaps in required logistics intelligence.
- .16____ Determines, in coordination with the BSSG, locally available or interservice sources of food, water, fuel, medical, and consumable supplies of all types.
- .17____ Coordinates with the G-1 and BSSG for a review of transportation assets available, and recommends an evacuation policy to the MEB commander.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .18_____ Determines, in coordination with MEG surgeons, medical requirements for the evacuation of casualties, medical and dental support, medical supply, establishment ashore of primary treatment centers, and temporary hospitalization.
- .19_____ Identifies, in coordination with the G-1 and G-3, civil affairs support requirements, and compares those needs with available in country resources in order to determine shortfalls.
- .20_____ Identifies, in coordination with the BSSG, requirements or other construction requirements.
- .21_____ Reviews quantities, types of equipment, and supplies computed by the BSSG required for each successive stage of the operation, including their assigned priorities of issue.
- .22_____ Uses standardized procedures contained in the SOP's to develop the CSS plan.
- .23_____ Considers, in coordination with all elements, crossdecking requirements to support the CSS concept as well as movement of personnel required to complete staff planning.
- .24_____ Reviews CSS requirement shortfalls, problem areas, and limitations, and following MEB commanders concurrence forwards unfilled requirements to higher command element.
- .25_____ Reviews the concept of CSS proposed by the BSSG, and coordinates any changes required.
- .26_____ Develops a concept for CSS which provides support functions to be performed as far forward geographically as possible to eliminate delay time in filling requests.
- .27_____ Prepares, in coordination with the BSSG, appropriate annexes and other input to the operation plan/order.
- .28_____ (A) Participates in the activation and operation of a tactical logistical group (TACLOG) for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with the MEB G-3, GCE, ACE, and BSSG.
- .29_____ (A) Coordinates with the ACE and BSSG for the planning of forward arming and refueling points (FARP) in support of follow-on missions after the initial ship-to-shore movement.
- .30_____ Identifies, in coordination with the BSSG (A) and ATF agencies, additional sources of CSS, particularly facilities, supplies and transportation, and establishes procedures to allow for requesting those assets.
- .31_____ Coordinates with the G-2 to identify the threat to CSS operations in the rear and forward areas.
- .32_____ Establishes priorities (G-4 in coordination with G-3) for CSS which go directly to the BSSG for action.
- .33_____ Develops legal and claims procedures for inclusion in the operation plan/orders in coordination with the MEB SJA.
- .34_____ Reviews contingency plans and recommendations prepared by the BSSG to deal with identified shortfalls, CSS problems, and limitations.
- .35_____ Coordinates with the G-3 and (A) ATF staff for the employment of helicopters, (A) landing craft, and AAV's to support the logistical buildup during the ship-to-shore movement, and follow-on resupply requirements.
- .36_____ Plans the locations of supporting and supported facilities that will assist future operations.
- .37_____ Coordinates with the G-1 and G-2 and, develops a plan for refugees and displaced persons.
- .38_____ Coordinates with the G-1, G-2, and BSSG to plan for the handling and intelligence exploitation.
- .39_____ Coordinates with CEO any unique communication requirements needing external support.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRINCIPAL MPF LOGISTICS PLANNING CONSIDERATIONS

MPF operations must provide maximum flexibility in:

1. Marshalling and movement to ports of embarkation.
2. Arrival and reception in the AAA.
3. Preparation and distribution of MPE/S.
4. Task organization of the BSSG.
5. Support of future tactical operations.

PRINCIPAL CONCERNS IN THE AREA OF OPERATIONS

CSS is primarily concerned with:

1. Provision of combat essential supplies (rations, water, ammunition, and POL) to the user.
2. Maintenance of weapons and equipment.
3. Sustaining personnel strengths via preventive medicine, casualty treatment, movement of replacements, law enforcement, and straggler control.
4. Supply.
5. Engineering.
6. Transportation.
7. Health Services.
8. Services.

TASK: 7B.1.14 (G,M) PLAN FOR TRANSITION FROM DEPLOYMENT TO EMPLOYMENT

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in receipt of the initiating directive. The mission calls for the employment of at least an MEB sized force as soon as possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Develops concepts for independent operations.
- .2___ Develops concepts for joint operations as part of a combined force.
- .3___ Ensures that all staff sections and MEB command elements understand command relationships and how those relationships change after transition.
- .4___ Develops concepts for the exchange of information at all levels of the MEB.
- .5___ Develops concepts for the exchange of liaison officers/teams.
- .6___ Prepares plans for the clear delineation of responsibility for local security through all phases of the transition process.
- .7___ Prepares reporting procedures to notify higher headquarters of the operational readiness of subelements of the MEB.

- .8____ Develops plans for the use of assembly areas to facilitate transition.
- .9____ Prepares plans for response to hostile action during arrival and assembly.
- .10____ Allocates the staff planning effort between arrival and assembly/deployment and preparations for subsequent employment.
- .11____ Shifts focus of planning effort based upon an increased enemy threat.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.15 (A) PLAN THE LANDING

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEB is in receipt of an initiating directive that directs elements of the MEB to conduct an amphibious assault. The MEB commander has announced his concept of operations, and has approved the GCE's proposed scheme of maneuver.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Determines LF requirements for the ship-to-shore movement and available organic LF ship-to-shore assets.
- .2____ Allocates assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensuring that the allocation provides for the maximum support of the initial tactical operations ashore.
- .3____ Consolidates landing plans of subordinate elements, resolves conflicts, and ensures that the plan is totally integrated with the scheme of maneuver ashore and the fire support plan.
- .4____ Plans for flexibility in the landing of supporting arms and reserve elements.
- .5____ Considers enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or helicopter-borne assaults.
- .6____ Assigns elements of the LF one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .7____ Examines the landing plan to ensure that it is supportable with the shipping/airlift available and with any constraints imposed by embarkation shortfalls.
- .8____ Provides input to the ATF for the control afloat of landing craft, AAV's, helicopters, and floating dumps to ensure maximum support for the landing plan.
- .9____ Divides LF supplies into three general categories: prescribed loads, propositioned emergency supplies, and remaining LF supplies.
- .10____ Ensures that the plan provides for the requisite logistical support for all forces ashore.
- .11____ Completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning/crossdecking to occur.
- .12____ Develops alternate plans to cover foul weather interference and/or changes in the enemy situation.
- .13____ Requests additional assets from CATF, or adjusts plans accordingly if available, assets for the ship-to-shore movement cannot satisfy the requirements.
- .14____ Publishes the landing plan as an appendix to the amphibious operations annex of the operation plan/order.
- .15____ Assigns adequate personnel to TACLOG to advise Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, and supplies.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-20

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.16 PLAN FOR SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The MEB faces a potential threat from aircraft, helicopter-borne assault, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a night vision capability and multi-discipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force(s) capabilities and intentions.
- .2____ Ensures operational planners at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
- .3____ Evaluates whether the ROE provide sufficient flexibility for the MEB to defend itself against likely threats. Initiates immediate requests for ROE modification, when necessary.
- .4____ Plans passive security measures to include dispersal, camouflage, hardening positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
- .5____ Directs the use of field expedient measures against enemy lasers as well as the use of filters and laser spectacles.
- .6____ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and oncall.
- .8____ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and air defense coverage.
- .9____ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for CS and CSS forces.
- .10____ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, overt and covert observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's), and other local security techniques.
- .11____ Ensures all convoys are provided with appropriate security.
- .12____ Plans for the positioning of LAAD units for defense in depth within the objective area, and/or in point defense of the vital area.
- .13____ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures to notify and transport them, if required.
- .14____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .15____ Plans for the Early introduction of counterintelligence personnel.
- .16____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units, tactical recovery of airborne personnel (TRAP), mass casualties, etc.
- .17____ Ensures that rear area security plans place minimum reliance on combat units.
- .18____ Divides the rear area into several smaller AOR, when appropriate.
- .19____ Ensures that each subordinate unit understands its responsibility for local security.
- .20____ Ensures that the rear area security effort is proportional to the threat.
- .21____ Plans security of MEB rear area.

- .22_____ Plans active counterintelligence measures designed to neutralize the hostile multidiscipline intelligence collection effort and hostile efforts toward sabotage, subversion, and terrorism.
- .23_____ Develops passive counterintelligence measures designed to conceal and deny information to the enemy, protect personnel from subversion and terrorism, and protect installations and material against sabotage.
- .24_____ Plans for conduct of liaison between counterintelligence personnel and host nation intelligence and security personnel.
- .25_____ Requests an estimate of the enemy's time lag in processing, developing, distributing, and acting upon their own or allied/3d country overhead photography or satellite information.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1 17 PLAN FOR CIVIL AFFAIRS

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its employment. The MEB has been informed that friendly noncombatants are located within the area of interest. The MEB commander has designated staff cognizance of civil affairs activities to the G-3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Requests all available information on the intended area of interest to include; customs, traditions, national and religious observances, cultural differences, sacred or forbidden places, local government, copies of local laws and international agreements signed by the countries in the area of interest.
- .2_____ Requests intelligence information concerning the attitudes of the local populace toward U.S. forces.
- .3_____ Requests intelligence and combat information on the current in country situation with emphasis on the effect of combat on the population in the area.
- .4_____ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability concentrating on the estimated extent of civilian interference (e.g., refugees, demonstrators, and by-standard), the control/security measures necessary to minimize interference and protect civilians, and the availability of any emergency food, clothing, housing, and medical requirements.
- .5_____ Coordinates the development of civilian affairs policy with higher HQ's planners to include civil information/education, public health, public safety/property control, public works, and utilities.
- .6_____ Integrates civil affairs activities into the planned scheme of maneuver.
- .7_____ Conducts liaison with host Government military and civilian authorities Early in the planning if the situation allows.
- .8_____ Develops in coordination with higher HQ's planners, proclamations, ordinances, orders, instructions, or other civil affairs guidance and regulations to ensure the required degree of control over the populace in order to provide for the security of forces, prevent civilian interference with operations, and protect the status of nonbelligerents per the law of war.
- .9_____ Plans the programs required to control refugees and displaced persons and disseminates instructions to all subordinate elements.
- .10_____ Coordinates with higher HQ's planners, the U.S. Department of State, and relief agencies for the evacuation of noncombatants.
- .11_____ Coordinates with higher HQ's, the MEB surgeon, and BSSG medical staff for the procedures to be used in the medical treatment and evacuation of sick or wounded civilians.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-22

- .12____ Provides instructions for the handling of claims against the United States.
- .13____ Provides staff supervision over all attached civil affairs units, and makes recommendations as to the size and composition of those units.
- .14____ Prepares civil affairs estimates, and appropriate annexes to the operations order.
- .15____ Determines civil affairs reports required from subordinates, and provides reports to higher command elements.
- .16____ Coordinates communications requirements for civil affairs operations with the CEO.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.18 PLAN FOR PUBLIC AFFAIRS

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its employment. The situation has attracted the attention of international civilian news media representatives (NMR's). It is anticipated that employment of the MEB will result in intensified media coverage. The threat forces have a public disinformation and psychological operations capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Participates in all stages of operational planning.
- .2____ Coordinates the development of public affairs (PA) policy with higher HQ's planners, to include initial release and Questions and Answers for use in internal and public information programs.
- .3____ Prepares a PA estimate and Annex F to the operations order.
- .4____ Plans for the implementation of an internal information program, to include production of an expeditionary newspaper, media training of commanders, key staff officers and enlisted Marines.
- .5____ Requests audiovisual (AV) support from adjacent/higher HO's.
- .6____ Coordinates military PA/AV coverage of the MEB.
- .7____ Determines the most expeditious means of transmitting PA/AV materials to a higher HO's releasing authority or internal information media.
- .8____ (M) Plans for employment with the Survey, Liaison Reconnaissance Party (SLRP).
- .9____ Ensures that a qualified PA/AV team accompanies the first personnel and equipment to the objective area.
- .10____ Conducts liaison with U.S. consular/host government public information agencies.
- .11____ Plans to receive, brief, escort, and assist the Department of Defense National News Media Pool.
- .12____ Plans to receive, brief, escort, and assist additional NMR's, establishing and/or implementing an accreditation process.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.19 PLAN FOR PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The embarked/MPF/GPF MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its employment. The MEB is awaiting receipt of the initiating directive.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Plans, in coordination with the G-2, an estimate of the number of POW's to be included in the G-1 estimate of supportability.
- .2_____ Coordinates with the CINC/ATF/MPF staff to determine whether POW's are to be detained ashore or on available shipping, and the location of collection points.
- .3_____ Determines the requirement for MP support to collect, evacuate, and guard POW's.
- .4_____ Establishes, in coordination with the G-2, procedures for the Early intelligence exploitation, evacuation, administration, and protection of POW's per the SOP.
- .5_____ Publishes specific POW processing/handling instructions in the operation plan/order. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: Instructions for POW handling should include the following:

SEARCHING

POW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of POW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances false such a search impractical. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment. POW's should be tagged for identification and later matching with any documents/equipment found, and should be instructed not to talk to other POW's to prevent collaboration of stories.

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment of supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment, (protective masks, first-aid kits, etc.) clothing, and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. When such documents are taken from a POW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual POW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the POW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of a POW be taken.

PERSONAL EFFECTS

Except as indicated below, POW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money, valuables, and protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-24

purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from POW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of POW's by categories first requires that individual POW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of POW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate POW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex. Evacuate POW's to collection points under guard as soon as possible. Rapid initial processing will contribute to the timeliness of interrogation.

MEDICAL CARE

POW's are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any difference in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

TASK: 7B.1.20 PLAN TACTICAL DECEPTION

CONDITION(S): Mission analysis has been conducted, and the MEB commander has requested that his staff study the information available and consider the integration of tactical deception with the scheme of maneuver. Planning time is limited.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ The overall mission and objectives of the tactical deception is well understood.
- .2____ Analyzes the enemy perceptions of the operational area in coordination with G-2 and available intelligence sources.
- .3____ Determines enemy vulnerability to deception, identifying any enemy peculiarities or weaknesses.
- .4____ Collects available intelligence/combat information to determine if the enemy threat warrants the use of deception.
- .5____ Collects indications of what CA the enemy "expects" us to take.
- .6____ Identifies opportunities for deception.
- .7____ Considers whether there are feasible CA's upon which to build a realistic deception.
- .8____ Analyzes what possible CA's are available to the enemy commanders.
- .9____ Identifies a logical opportunity to integrate the deception into the ground situation.
- .10____ Determines if enough information is known about the enemy sensor network to effectively feed false information.
- .11____ Analyzes advantages/disadvantages and risks associated with including deception operations.
- .12____ Evaluates whether the possible compromise of the deception will justify any loss of operational flexibility as well as the result on the operation if the deception is not effective.
- .13____ Analyzes whether COMSEC and OPSEC procedures are sufficient to conceal deception planning and subsequent operations, and more importantly, to deny the enemy knowledge of the true intentions.
- .14____ Prepares a plan that is believable to the enemy, consistent with the enemy's perception of our real capabilities, tactical doctrine, SOP's, patterns, etc.
- .15____ Develops the deception plan with the same degree of thoroughness as the operation plan.
- .16____ Develops a decryption story that provides adequate information to deter the enemy from taking any undesirable action, and causes the enemy to follow a predictable pattern.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .17___ Develops a plan which considers the concept of surprise.
- .18___ Considers the expenditure of personnel and equipment to support the deception concept to include secure communications and frequencies.
- .19___ Coordinates with the CEO regarding such assets as the Fleet Deception Group.
- .20___ Determines whether there is sufficient time available to formulate, coordinate, organize, and execute the deception.
- .21___ Ensures the deception proposal supports and minimizes the vulnerabilities of the operation plan but is not critical to the overall success of the assigned mission.
- .22___ Considers the involvement and support required from other units, services, and agencies.
- .23___ Gathers intelligence on the enemy commander(s); e.g., identity, leadership style, strengths and weaknesses, tactical experience, tactical style, sensor network, morale, and staff procedures, to tailor the plan to influence enemy reactions.
- .24___ Determines how long the enemy commander will need to formulate and issue orders, including an estimate of time required by the enemy communications system to move the order from commander to subordinate elements.
- .25___ Ensures deception events are consistent with past and future operations, and avoid the "windfall" (information easily obtained, is information easily discarded) effect.
- .26___ Collects information to predict the enemy's probable reaction to the overall deception plan and each event.
- .27___ Develops deception events that support the plan, targets those information systems the enemy commander places the greatest reliance on, and allows the enemy enough time to analyze and react in the desired manner.
- .28___ Ensures the story permits verification by various enemy collection systems.
- .29___ Evaluates enemy sensor system to determine which sensors cannot be deceived, and targets them for neutralization through other means (i.e., jamming, destruction, and OPSEC).
- .30___ Determines the availability of means to destroy those sensors, and checks to ensure their neutralization will not interfere with other operations.
- .31___ Evaluates whether the deception can still be effective without the neutralization of the sensors that cannot be deceived.
- .32___ Determines the availability of assets to monitor the feedback of the effectiveness of deception events.
- .33___ Plans for enough flexibility to counter any unexpected enemy reaction.
- .34___ Wargames the concept to ensure the plan and associated events logically relate to the tactical situation, and all deception events support the deception objective.
- .35___ Includes provisions for special reporting.
- .36___ Coordinates with higher and adjacent units and all agencies which will participate in, or be affected by, the deception execution.
- .37___ Plans phase-out actions to disguise the fact the deception has been used.
- .38___ Gains approval from the MEB commander.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.21 (M) MARSHAL AND MOVE THE MEB

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in receipt of the initiating directive and has been directed to close on their Maritime Prepositioning Equipment/Ships (MPE/S). The airfield beach/port complex is a known quality and has been included in contingency planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes the air movement coordination center(s) ACC.. at the major aerial port(s) of embarkation (APOE).
- .2____ Provides an MEB liaison element (MLE) to the force deployment support control center (FDSCC).
- .3____ Establishes the priority and sequence for the movement of unit personnel, equipment, and sallies to be transported.
- .4____ Prepares aircraft load plans to incorporate priorities for movement for all personnel, equipment, and supplies that makeup the FIE.
- .5____ Documents and manifests all loads of unit personnel, equipment, and supplies in conjunction with the departure airfield control group (DACG) and the airlift control element (ALCE).
- .6____ Coordinates development of embarkation schedules.
- .7____ Provides liaison representative(s) to the movement control center (MCC).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.22 (A) PREPARE FOR LANDING DURING SEA TRANSIT

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in transit to the objective area. Initial planning has been completed and approved.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Wargames concept, and if time permits, rehearses, or at B minimum, builds models, sandtables, sketches; et al, for briefing purposes.
- .2____ Utilizes a terrain model, sketch, overlay, or other training aids when briefing the operation plan.
- .3____ Conducts detailed brief on the landing plan to all key individuals to include pilots, coxswains, and combat cargo officers.
- .4____ Ensures all personnel understand the plans and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.
- .5____ Allows opportunity for questions and comments.
- .6____ Isolates, for OPSEC purposes any selected individuals whose knowledge of forthcoming operations must be protected until completion of the mission.
- .7____ Issues weapons and equipment, and conducts maintenance checks, limited technical inspections (LTI's), and preoperation checks on required special equipment.

- .8___ Conducts unit and individual training drills.
- .9___ Schedules rehearsals and issues a rehearsal schedule.
- .10___ Rehearses debarkation drills.
- .11___ Ensures all personnel have received training on special equipment, weapons, or ordnance issued.
- .12___ Sets battle sights zero (BZO) on all weapons and calibrates those with night vision devices.
- .13___ Briefs all personnel on ROE.
- .14___ Adheres to EMCON throughout the transit phase.
- .15___ Coordinates with the ATF for COMSEC monitoring analysis and reporting throughout the transit phase.
- .16___ Ensures procedures are established to pass AEW information to subordinates using information gathered from ATF/CVBG/land based aircraft (E3, E2) data links.
- .17___ Makes adjustment to plans based on intelligence updates, availability of operationally ready assault amphibians, helicopters and landing craft, and disseminates any required changes to subordinate units.
- .18___ Upon arrival in the objective area, MEB commander coordinates with CATF on final decisions. (KI)
- .19___ MEB and Navy representatives in SACC coordinate delivery of preplanned preassault fires.
- .20___ MEB reports readiness of the LF to begin the assault.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

FINAL DECISIONS

It is a CATF responsibility to reach a final decision on execution of the primary or alternate plan and to confirm or alter the planned H-hour. These decisions are reached after arrival of the task force in the objective area and in consultation with the MEB commander.

TASK: 7B.1.23 (M) ARRIVE AT THE AAA AND ASSEMBLE THE MEB

CONDITION(S): The MEB's first FIE aircraft and the first MP ship have arrived at the AAA. The remaining ships and aircraft are arriving on schedule. The AAA meets all preplanned requirements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y N: NE

- .1___ Coordinates initial preparation of the AAA.
- .2___ Coordinates arrival and offload of MPE/S through a port, across a beach or a combination of both.
- .3___ Arranges for the reception and initial disposition of the FIE. (KI)
- .4___ Coordinates the throughput and distribution of MPE/S within the AAA.
- .5___ Reconstitutes the MEB from its movement group organization into an MAGTF.
- .6___ Provides for security of the AAA.
- .7___ Prepares for the MEB operational mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-28

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

GOAL OF MPF DEPLOYMENT

The goal of maritime propositioned deployment is the earliest possible establishment of combat power for employment in the objective area. This calls for rapid deployment of command and control, reception and off-load capability, and a support structure. There may be no need for combat units in the AAA until support capability has been established. Premature introduction of combat forces will increase consumption of consumable supplies and create additional support requirements.

TASK: 7B.1.24 (A) PLAN THE REHEARSAL

CONDITION(S): The MEB is en route to the objective area. A suitable rehearsal site has been located and time is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Issues a warning order to subordinate elements alerting them to the rehearsal schedule.
- .2___ Develops, in coordination with CATF, a rehearsal plan in adherence to restrictions established on electronic emissions, flight activities, and other actions that might disclose the operation and cause OPSEC violations.
- .3___ Publishes a rehearsal plan which gives the number, nature and scope of rehearsals, date and time for each, area in which they will be conducted, and foul weather plans.
- .4___ Ensures the plan is detailed enough to test the adequacy, timing, combat readiness of units, and communications plan of the intended operation.
- .5___ Compiles recommendations from subordinate elements, and recommends to CLF/CATF, those critical or irreplaceable items that should not be used during rehearsal operations.
- .6___ Conducts pre-rehearsal briefings.
- .7___ Conducts staff rehearsals in the form of a CPX or refresher training for watch standard prior to involving subordinate units.
- .8___ Conducts an integrated rehearsal, which at a minimum effectively evaluates the adequacy of the landing plan, timing of detailed operations, readiness of participating forces, and the communications plan.
- .9___ Verifies the timing of debarkation as well as the timing of other complex evolutions to be conducted during the actual assault.
- .10___ Conducts detailed critiques after each rehearsal.
- .11___ Develops changes to planning documents based on problems noted during the rehearsal, and disseminates these changes to subordinates.
- .12___ Rehearses again if time is available.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.25 PREPARE TO COMMUNICATE

CONDITION(S): All communications planning is complete. (G,M) The MEB is in the final stages of arrival and assembly. (A) The MEB is en route to the objective area. A suitable rehearsal site has been located and time is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Conducts briefings on overall operation/comm plan, schedule of events, COMSEC plan, et al.
- .2___ Briefs staff on communications plan.
- .3___ Uses graphic aids, maps, charts, needline diagrams, alternate route diagrams, etc., when briefing.
- .4___ Conducts preparatory training required on COMSEC equipment and materials.
- .5___ Conducts preoperations inspections, inventory, and operations checks.
- .6___ (A) Ensures the rehearsal plan fully tests the supportability of the communications plan.
- .7___ Validates the requirement for planned ground or air retransmission sites.
- .8___ Verifies compatibility of COMSEC means and procedures.
- .9___ (A) Conducts operational checks of all LF shipboard circuits during the rehearsal.
- .10___ (A) Tests communications terminating in the SACC/TACC/HDC/LFOC/JIB/TACLOG during the rehearsal.
- .11___ Installs communications based on established priorities.
- .12___ (A) Evaluates communications personnel proficiency during the rehearsal.
- .13___ Conducts correct message drafting briefings.
- .14___ Demonstrates procedures for handling high priority messages.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.26 PREPARE TACTICAL DECEPTION PLAN

CONDITION(S): The MEB has received a warning order to conduct an attack. The decision has been made to integrate deception events along with the scheme of maneuver. Due to the urgency of the situation, preparation time is limited.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Makes final coordination for all aspects of the overall deception plan to include communications, logistics, command and control.
- .2___ Establishes the same level of OPSEC for the deception plan as for the actual operation plan.
- .3___ Publishes and distributes the deception plan as either a part of the operation order or as a separate appendix, and includes:

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4____ Deception target/objectives Concept Tasks to subordinate units
Objectives Phasing schedule Coordinating instructions COMMUNICATIONS
and operations security.
- .5____ Briefs all elements on the deception plan, events and procedures,
and, if time permits, rehearses or at a minimum builds models,
prepares a sandtable sketches, etc.
- .6____ Affords participants an opportunity to ask questions in order to
ensure a thorough understanding.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.27 EXECUTE TACTICAL DECEPTION

CONDITION(S): The MEB has received the order to conduct an attack. An operation order has been prepared that includes the use of deception. The MEB commander has ordered the execution of the plan prior to, or simultaneously with, the landing/attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Ensures training for deception operators is conducted.
- .2____ Employs the deception story as planned.
- .3____ Integrates the deception plan with the actual operations.
- .4____ Establishes intelligence means and indicators to monitor feedback,
and measure enemy reactions to the deception.
- .5____ Provides all personnel monitoring the action a list of indicators.
- .6____ The deception plan is well coordinated within the force, as well as
with CINC/CATF and any other joint/combined elements, as required.
- .7____ Friendly forces are able to react to any unanticipated enemy actions
which cause portions of the deception plan to be inappropriate.
- .8____ Effectively uses assets dedicated to the deception.
- .9____ Executes the planned phase-out actions which are designed to
disguise the fact that deception was used.
- .10____ Deception plan influences enemy decisions and reactions.
- .11____ Deception plan has a positive influence on the successful execution
of the overall tactical operation.
- .12____ Effectively integrates emissions control (EMCON) into the deception
plan.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Attempt to document all aspects of the operation to facilitate an overall critique on the deception.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.28 ARRIVE IN OBJECTIVE AREA

CONDITION(S):

1. Amphibious task force has arrived in the objective area and has received the order to execute the planned assault landing. (G,M) The MEB has completed functions in the AAA, constituted itself as an MAGTF and is prepared to execute the mission for which the MEB was deployed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

1. Makes only absolutely necessary alterations to plans based on reevaluated and updated estimates of the situation, and the availability of operationally ready assault amphibians, helicopters, landing craft, and supporting arms.
2. Coordinates any changes to plans with adjacent, supporting, and higher command elements as well as subordinate units.
3. (A) LF and ATF representatives in SACC review the schedule of fires planned, the latest intelligence information, readiness information, and any changes to plans prior to initiation of the assault.
4. (A) Final decisions are made after consultation between the CATF and CLF.
5. MEB commander reports readiness of the landing force to begin assault.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.29 (A) LAND THE LANDING FORCE

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibian vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are within the quantities anticipated in the final version of the MEB landing plan developed after the rehearsal.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Provides final intelligence update to ACE and GCE which emphasizes critical information such as the location of antiaircraft defensive positions, antiboat defensive positions, etc.
- .2_____ Adheres to EMCON condition set, removing restrictions on radio emissions only on order.
- .3_____ Maintains close coordination with the CATF in monitoring the assault landing of the various waves.
- .4_____ First wave of helicopters and assault craft land within 30 seconds of the designated time at planned LZ and beach.
- .5_____ Coordinates logistic support for assaulting GCE through representatives in logistics support center (LSC) and ships logistic coordination center (SLCC).
- .6_____ Controls the progress of the landing, as required, by the developing situation, and through allocation of support in response to requests from ground and aviation combat elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.30 TRANSITION FROM DEPLOYMENT TO EMPLOYMENT

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in the objective area and assembled with its MPS/E.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Completes plans for independent operations.
- .2____ Completes plans for joint or joint/combined operations.
- .3____ Publishes to all staff sections and MEB command elements the post transition command relationships.
- .4____ Coordinates the exchange of information at all levels of the MEB.
- .5____ Exchanges liaison officers/teams.
- .6____ Assigns responsibility for and implements local security transition process.
- .7____ Reports, to higher HQ's, as required, the operational readiness of sub-elements of the MEB.
- .8____ Utilizes assembly areas to facilitate transition.
- .9____ Responds to hostile action during arrival and assembly.
- .10____ Allocates the staff planning effort between arrival and assembly/deployment and preparations for subsequent employment.
- .11____ Shifts focus of planning effort based upon an increased enemy threat.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.31 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION

CONDITION(S):

1. MEB forces have begun both a surface and a helicopterborne assault. The GCE's FSCC has not yet been established ashore and the SACC is coordinating the delivery of fires. The landing and subsequent operations can be at night, during daylight, or during periods of low visibility. (G,M) The MEB is engaged in the operational mission for which it was deployed. Updated intelligence has been received.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (A) LF and ATF representatives in the SACC coordinate the delivery of air, NGF preparatory fires, and shift fires as the assault progresses.
- .2____ (A) Transfers coordinating authority ashore to the GCE in increments as soon as units ashore have the capability to control fires.
- .3____ Coordinates the attack of targets in the priorities established in the operation order.
- .4____ Utilizes all the fire support measures necessary in the commander's AOR.

- .5____ Maintains a detailed plot of friendly positions and maintains restrictive fire measures in support of intelligence collection assets forward of FEBA.
- .6____ Recommends the most effective fire support means to engage preplanned targets.
- .7____ Responds quickly to targeting data and immediate fire support requests to assist in coordinating the delivery of fire support and counter unexpected enemy actions.
- .8____ Recommends intervention in requests for fire only when needed.
- .9____ Establishes/publishes colon target designation system.
- .10____ Resolves conflicts between elements of the MEB on fire support matters.
- .11____ Requests additional fire support from the (A) CATF and supporting forces, if required.
- .12____ (A) Maintains reliable ship-to-shore radio communications on appropriate fire support/requests nets.
- .13____ (A) Maintains the capability to monitor requests for fires once the FSCC personnel augmenting the SACC displace ashore, and are prepared to reassume control in the event the FSCC, once established, becomes a casualty.
- .14____ Plans fires in support of future operations in coordination with the G-3.
- .15____ Maintains status of all fire support assets.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.32 (A) CONTROL OPERATIONS ASHORE

CONDITION(S): The GCE of MEB is ashore and is building up combat power. MEB headquarters remains afloat. Aviation combat element remains afloat. The FSCC, augmented by an austere air control element, is ashore and functioning. SACC continues to coordinate fires delivered outside the AOQ assigned to the GCE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y. N: NE

- .1____ Maintains close and continuous liaison with CATF and his staff.
- .2____ Continues to disseminate intelligence updates to units ashore.
- .3____ Influences maneuver ashore through issuance of mission type orders, assignment of mission objectives, and allocation of resources in response to requests from the GCE.
- .4____ Through representatives in SACC, continues to monitor the use of firepower ashore and makes known to the CATF any requirements for additional support from outside the assets of the ATF.
- .5____ Compiles an MEB SITREP that is forwarded to the appropriate fleet commander, via the Navy chain of command with an information copy to the appropriate Fleet Marine Force (FMF) commander.
- .6____ Controls logistic support ashore through mission orders given to the BSSG and through allocation of air and surface lift assets to support functions.
- .7____ Provides guidance in the mission order to form the basis for development of ATO.
- .8____ Coordinates rear area security.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.33 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. (A) The GCE of the MEB is ashore as well as elements of the BSSG. (A) The MEB and ACE command elements are located onboard ATF shipping. Multichannel radio circuits have been established to silos for ship-to-shore telephone (unsecure) communications. The commander, based on the enemy's EW capability, has stressed the use of wire throughout the MEB.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Demonstrates the ability to quickly lay and install wire communications concurrent with the movement of units and the establishment of CP's.
- .2____ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for the back-up system.
- .3____ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities, if available.
- .4____ Installs and maintains telephone system according to established priorities.
- .5____ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .6____ Identifies back-up system capable of restoring essential services, if required.
- .7____ Engineers telephone switching system to provide for alternate routes, and ensures use of alternate routes are understood by users.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Back-up systems can be as rudimentary as laying a hotline between two units. The important factor is that commanders had a redundant system, and could still pass information if the primary means failed.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.34 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. The requirement exists to establish communications control at the MEB, ACE, GCE, and BSSG level.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes communication control procedures based on the COMM SOP.
- .2____ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3____ Maintains circuit status.
- .4____ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5____ Provides the necessary communications to allow for continuous command and control.
- .6____ Receives and prepares communications status reports, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.35 EMPLOY ELECTRONIC COUNTER COUNTERMEASURES (ECCM)

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. The enemy has an ECM and ESM capability which he has actively employed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Uses terrain masking techniques where practical.
- .2___ Uses only authorized codes.
- .3___ All radio and telecommunications means are secured with encryption devices to the maximum extent possible, utilizing authorized op codes/manual encryption on any unsecured circuit.
- .4___ Radio operators continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness, and send messages by alternate means, if available.
- .5___ Radios are remoted from antennas to the maximum extent practical.
- .6___ Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
- .7___ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
- .8___ Adheres to EMCON conditions.
- .9___ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10___ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope of the hill (away from the enemy) when practicable.
- .11___ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12___ Uses daily changing frequencies and call signs on all tactical nets whenever frequency allocations and call sign assignments allow.
- .13___ Reports meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) per formats and procedures designated.
- .14___ Uses lowest power necessary on radios to provide communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.36 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2___ Selects and correctly employs proper antennas.
- .3___ Follows correct safety techniques.
- .4___ Follows proper grounding procedures.
- .5___ Follows lost communications procedures.
- .6___ Employs radio retransmission capability as required.
- .7___ Employs effective equipment power source management.
- .8___ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .9___ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment employment.
- .10___ Uses equipment record jackets and appropriate technical manuals TM's.
- .11___ Performs preventive maintenance per the applicable TM's.
- .12___ Employs proper EMCON techniques.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.37 CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. The enemy is known to possess nuclear and chemical warfare capabilities and have demonstrated their intention to employ NBC attacks in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ MEB possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC attacks and reports required.
- .2___ Establishes back-up command, control and communications procedures to be used under NBC conditions.
- .3___ Receives NBC reports from subordinate MEB elements or higher command elements during NBC attack.
- .4___ Alerts all subordinate elements and provides guidance.
- .5___ Provides guidance/direction to subordinates concerning Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP), detection, monitor/survey operations, contamination avoidance, and decontamination procedures.
- .6___ Continues to receive reports from subordinate elements.
- .7___ Provides updates to subordinates as they become available.
- .8___ Provides assistance to subordinates in hasty or deliberate decontamination beyond their capabilities.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 9.____ Advises the G-3 on the effects of an NBC environment on the unit's ability to carry out particular aspects of its mission.
- .10____ Provides subordinate units a chemical downwind message every 6 hours.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.38 OPERATE A COMMAND POST

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. (G,M) The progression of combat operations and the enemy situation causes the MEB Command Post to displace frequently. The enemy has a long range reconnaissance capability in addition to direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. (A) The MEB commander has decided to displace his command post ashore and initiate phasing ashore of the MEB's command and control capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Organizes and operates the command post per prescribes procedures contained in the MEB's SOP.
- .2____ Staffs the command post with the general staff, necessary special staff officers, liaison personnel from attached, adjacent and supporting units, and supporting personnel.
- .3____ Organizes personnel, equipment, and vehicles to operate on a 24-hour a day basis.
- .4____ Bases the location of the command post on troop disposition, routes of communications, communication requirements, type of tactical operations, space required, cover and concealment, and security, etc.; i.e., the command post is located well forward in the attack to avoid the requirement for an early displacement and to the rear of the defensive area to avoid a hasty displacement in the event of an enemy penetration.
- .5____ Identifies alternate locations in the event the command post must be displaced rapidly.
- .6____ Prepares plans for the establishment of alternate command posts per procedures contained in the MEB's SOP.
- .7____ Conducts, at a minimum, one displacement of the command post at night.
- .8____ Employs deceptive measures when planning, preparing, and conducting a command post displacement.
- .9____ Employs both active and passive security measures; e.g., use of local security patrols, natural cover and concealment, supplementary camouflage, etc.
- .10____ Demonstrates ability to react to a small unit attack.
- .11____ Restricts command post movement and access. (KI)
- .12____ Grounds barbed wire placed around facilities containing communications equipment to shunt induced voltages to ground to greatly reduce electromagnetic interference (EMI). (KI)
- .13____ Locates generators as far as possible away from antennas.
- .14____ Remotes antennas away from command post facilities to counter enemy direction finding (DF) efforts.
- .15____ Uses RG-58 coaxial cable or comparable cable vice WD-1 slash wire on those critical nets where the antennas are remoted from the command post to reduce signal loss through the transmission feed line.
- .16____ Radios and other electronic equipment are properly grounded to reduce susceptibility to noise generating sources.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-38

- .17___ Message handling procedures provide for message accountability, quick distribution, and are per the MEB's SOP.
- .18___ Disperses facilities, vehicles and equipment, and time permitting, digs in and reinforces positions.
- .19___ Locates dismount points, message drops and pick-up points, within defended areas.
- .20___ Locates bivouac areas and helicopter LZ's to add depth to local security forces.
- .21___ Positions supply and medical facilities in close proximity to the command post.
- .22___ Properly selects antenna sites using terrain masking and antenna site selection.
- .23___ Ensures communication signal lines do not cross power lines without proper insulation or are properly spaced when run parallel.
- .24___ Displaces the command post by echelon without a loss of control or degradation of communications.
- .25___ Effectively uses communication controls in support of the tactical situation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESTRICTION AND ACCESS CONTROL PROCEDURES

Entry and exit procedures to the command post area are rigidly enforced. A system which allows thorough screening and protections of U.S. personnel and equipment is instituted. This system is three-tiered at a minimum. The first tier consists of signs which control admittance and posts the rates of speed for vehicles approaching the checkpoint. The second tier, the trigger position, is where searches are conducted as well as identification is checked. The third tier is where weapons capable of destroying incoming vehicles are located; e.g., TOW, dragon, SMAW, and AT-4. Special orders for each post are established. The last tier, however, has the well defined mission to destroy, immediately, any vehicle passing the checkpoint without proper authorization.

TASK: 7B.1.39 ORGANIZE THE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. A combat operations center (COC) has been established. However, planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the MEB CP to displace frequently.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Maintains friendly and enemy status maps, overlays, charts, etc., required by the unit SOP in an up-to-date manner.
- .2___ Internal arrangement of the COC allows for the integration of operations, intelligence, and fire support.
- .3___ Manages information within the COC to ensure required action is taken in a coordinated, thorough, and timely manner, and that an audit trail is maintained.
- .4___ Conducts a detailed brief for oncoming match standard prior to relief.
- .5___ Employs a method which alerts personnel on watch to changes in the status of communications.
- .6___ Provides for message handling, accountability, and quick distribution procedures, per the SOP.
- .7___ Demonstrates the ability to use other communication paths or means traffic when the primary path or means fails.

ENCLOSURE (1)

.8____ SOP contains provision for the emergency destruction of classified material.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.1.40 PREPARE FOR COMPOSITING OF THE MEB

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are established ashore and have secured the force beachhead line (FBHL)/airfield port complex. An additional MAGTF (MEB or MEU) has been ordered into the area. A decision has been made for the deployed MEB to absorb the additional MAGTF. A CVBG is in support of operations. An airfield capable of handling transport and tactical aircraft is located in the airfield port complex. The enemy forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities. The airfield and the beach support areas are currently outside of enemy artillery range. AFOE is en route, and will arrive within 3 days. Limited planning time is available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Bases compositing on available contingency plan, and utilizes the plan's checklist.
- .2____ Reviews phased deployment of forces in the contingency plan, and prepares recommendations based on the current situation as well as anticipated changes.
- .3____ Verifies the plan's command relationships and the change of operational command (CHOP) sequence.
- .4____ Coordinates provisions for the arrival of the joining MAGTF's advance element to include work spaces, communications facilities, security, etc.
- .5____ Identifies available host nation and/or interservice support, and provides the information to staff planners immediately.
- .6____ Verifies that the time phased deployment of the additional MAGTF's assets calls for the early arrival of command elements to allow for the early passage of control over ground operations to occur, and to shorten the time required to assume control over air operations.
- .7____ Identifies liaison personnel for exchange with the compositing MAGTF's advance command element.
- .8____ Conducts a site survey of the airfield and facilities, and determines the level of effort required to establish fuel and ammunition storage areas, aircraft parking areas, maintenance areas, etc.
- .9____ Ensures all required coordination, planning, site improvement, etc., is complete to allow the airfield to be certified for the landing of USAF aircraft.
- .10____ Schedules a brief by the MEB, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staffs.
- .11____ Reviews MEB's SOP to ensure the compatibility of equipment and procedures.
- .12____ Develops a intelligence briefing capable of being tailored to meet the peculiar needs of the incoming MAGTF.
- .13____ Prepares recommendations for the joining MAGTF's CP sites, assembly areas, designation of MSR's, etc.
- .14____ Designates an FSCC to function as the interim composite FSCC.
- .15____ Assembles a throughput management team within the BSSG.
- .16____ Task organizes an arrival airfield control group (AACG) to support the MAGTF's arrival and assembly plan.
- .17____ Coordinates the placement of MEB units to provide both long range and close in security for arriving MAGTF forces.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .18____ Coordinates the early placement of direct air support center (DASC), air support radar team (ASRT), early warning control (ERIC) site, and assault fire unit (AFU) personnel and equipment.
- .19____ Makes provisions for the immediate integration of additional LAAD assets.
- .20____ Determines the scheduled arrival of the additional artillery regiment command element, if required, and assists in developing plans to ensure adequate command and control.
- .21____ Verifies COMSEC software/hardware compatibility.
- .22____ Coordinates provisions for the early arrival of follow on resupply and the assignment of priorities to prepare facilities to move, store, and protect those supplies.
- .23____ Identifies critical resupplying items and commodities.
- .24____ Promulgates the plan for the integration of the MAGTF's GCE into the MEB (MEF) GCE assets.
- .25____ Promulgates the plan for the integration of the MAGTF's ACE into the MEB (MEF) ACE assets.
- .26____ Promulgates the plan for the integration of the MAGTF CSSE into the MEB/MEF BSSG/FSSG.
- .27____ Participates in coordinating frequency and call sign assignments for incoming MAGTF.
- .28____ Promulgates the plan for expanding communication system to accommodate composited MAGTF.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

7B.2 GROUND COMBAT ELEMENT (GCE)

TASK: 7B.2.1 CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): A RLT comprises the GCE of the MEB that has been alerted to a political situation that requires the deployment/employment of the MEB. The MEB is currently awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have a direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities. The RLT is task organized with the normal complement of combat support units. Operations will be of unknown duration. The MEB has issued a warning order and the GCE staff and subordinate element leaders have begun their initial planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (G,H) Reviews MEB contingency airlift plans for notional task organization(s).
- .2____ (G,H) Reviews MEB data on prospective AAA to include, port, beach, airfield, airfield facilities, roads, local communications, water, power storage area, and prospective host nation information.
- .3____ (G,H) Based upon MEB plans, develops generic operational plans to support the MEB's timely offload and issuance of maritime propositioned equipment and supplies.
- .4____ (G,M) Provides requested input to the MEB on time phasing, MPF/GPF FIE, and AFORE.
- .5____ Analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
- .6____ Develops preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidelines provided by the MEB and RLT commander.
- .7____ RLT commander issues warning order and initial planning guidance to his staff and subordinate element leaders.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .8_____ Determines intelligence requirements, and requests information and intelligence support which exploits all resources, theater and national.
- .9_____ Reviews EEI's and recent vulnerability assessments, and initiates immediate measures to reduce OPSEC indicators.
- .10_____ Develops, in consonance with the planning guidance and designated physical objectives, proposed CA's.
- .11_____ Prepares estimates of supportability based upon the approved CA's.
- .12_____ Briefs estimates of supportability to the commander.
- .13_____ Analyzes and conducts a stargaze, if time allows, with each CA against probable enemy actions to see how the battle will progress.
- .14_____ Determines what reinforcements are required to accomplish the RLT's mission.
- .15_____ Presents recommended CA's to the MEB, and receives the MEB commander's decision and concept of operations statement.
- .16_____ Forwards for approval by the MEB commander, an initial concept of operations which fully exploits the means available; i.e., mobility, firepower, C4I2, and logistics.
- .17_____ Plans the concept of operations and concept of employing available fire support means concurrently.
- .18_____ Prepares a written or graphic presentation of the concept of operations in broad outline to include the task organization, and issues the concept as an outline plan, or provides it as input to the MEB plan.
- .19_____ Conducts a thorough reexamination and analysis Of the terrain, weather, and hydrographic conditions, and the enemy prior to conducting detailed planning.
- .20_____ Coordinates with all elements of the MEB during the development of a detailed scheme of maneuver, fire support plan, and (A) landing plan.
- .21_____ (A) Briefs, for CLF's approval, specific landing beaches within the landing area.
- .22_____ Participates in a decision brief on proposed drop zone(s) and LZ's, when joint airborne or air transported forces are involved in the operation.
- .23_____ Conducts a decision brief for MEB commander, along with the ACE, on proposed helicopter LZ's, and approach and retirement lanes.
- .24_____ Coordinates the development of the operation plan with the MEB staff.
- .25_____ Maintains close and continuous liaison throughout planning with all elements of the MEB.
- .26_____ Develops, publishes, and disseminates the deployment plan, arrival and assembly plan, the operation plan, embarkation plan, landing plan, countermechanized plan, and/or alternate plans if those plans are not incorporated into the MEB plans.
- .27_____ Coordinates with the ACE for the development and dissemination of the HAT, HEALT, HWSAT, and the Helicopter Landing Diagram.
- .28_____ Establishes procedures which provide for the continual review of reinforcement requirements and updating of the troop list.
- .29_____ Establishes review procedures which provide for the continual updating of the troop list and major end item availability.
- .30_____ Receives NBC policy guidance from the MEB, and plans implementation procedures for all subordinate elements to include earning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, required MOPP conditions, and passive and active defensive measures.
- .31_____ Arranges for staff reconnaissance, as the situation permits, or considers requesting "country team" assistance, if available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .32____ Uses planning aids such as maps, aerial photos, charts, sandtables, and relief papa during detailed planning.
- .33____ Consolidates en route training plans from elements of the RLT.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The RLT has been alerted of a political situation that requires the deployment/employment of the MEB. The RLT, as the GCE of the MEB, is currently awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have a direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate upon receipt of the warning order from the MEB. (KI)
- .2____ Prepares and presents an intelligence briefing to the commander and staff, based on available information on the enemy and area of operations.
- .3____ Coordinates with the MEB G-2 to prepare a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance. (KI)
- .4____ Determines, based on the assigned mission and guidance from the commander, intelligence requirements, basic requirements, EEL's, and OIR's.
- .5____ Assigns a priority of effort to satisfy these requirements based on the situation and guidance give .
- .6____ Determines RLT requirements for maps, charts, terrain models, photographs, aerial imagery, and other graphic aids, and initiates actions to obtain them.
- .7____ Uses the procedures contained in the intelligence SOP as the basis for planning and operations.
- .8____ Requests Pre D-day aerial imagery support from MEB.
- .9____ Phrases the commander's EEI(s) in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts; a positive directive, qualifying questions, and statements directing special attention.
- .10____ Coordinates all elements of counterintelligence with the MEG G-2.
- .11____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to MEB commander, or through him to higher, adjacent, and supporting commands.
- .12____ Makes early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .13____ Assists the MEB, adjacent, and supporting commanders in their collection efforts.
- .14____ Submits the orders for the collection of information into the intelligence annex or as fragmentary orders.
- .15____ Monitors the development of the MEB reconnaissance and surveillance plan that include a sensor surveillance plan.
- .16____ Determines the requirement for additional intelligence collection and analysis assets, and initiates action to obtain them.

- .17____ Manages the collection effort continually to ensure that orders and request are understood and fulfilled.
- .18____ Establishes, in coordination with the S-3, counter reconnaissance measures.
- .19____ Prepares an Intelligence annex to the operation order.
- .20____ Ensures the intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the SOP for intelligence.
- .21____ Dissociates effective signs and countersigns to subordinate elements.
- .22____ Coordinates the handling of captured personnel, documents, and equipment with the MEB and other staff officers.
- .23____ Coordinates with other MEB staff officers for the implementation of civilian control measures such as checkpoints, identification cards, and curfews.
- .24____ Coordinates with the G-3 for Pre D-Day ESM support.
- .25____ Identifies, communication circuit requirements to CEO.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of this preliminary estimate is to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to formulate basic decisions and to assist him in issuing planning guidance.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Intelligence estimation is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the warning order and continues throughout all phases of the planning process. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with the characteristics of the terrain in the objective area; anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected for the operation; (A) the location, characteristics and composition of available beaches; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy force in the objective area; and the location of civilian population concentrations and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concerned with the accomplishment of the four basic intelligence tasks:

1. Direction of intelligence effort.
2. Collection.
3. Processing information into intelligence.
4. Dissemination of intelligence.

The intelligence estimate is normally written if planning time allows. The subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice and are noisily based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. These changes are incorporated into the basic continuing estimate as soon as possible.

TASK: 7B.2.3 PLAN INTELLIGENCE COLLECTION

CONDITION(S): The RLT is in receipt of the warning order and has begun planning. A CVBG is also en route. The MEB is developing a collection plan concurrently.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Develops a collection plan for organic assets that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, and reflects the status of the collection effort.
- .2____ Utilizes an intelligence collection worksheet or other systematic method to manage the collection effort.
- .3____ Ensures a manageable and complete means of coordinating the collection effort which relates requirements to indications, indications to specific information sought, and particular information tasks to collection agencies.
- .4____ Identifies reporting instructions; I e., time constraints and to whom to report.
- .5____ Coordinates with collection agencies; of higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters in the preparation of requests and orders.
- .6____ Identify information needs to the next higher headquarters for integration into the overall collection effort.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.4 PROCESS AND DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The RLT has published a collection plan and has begun to receive reports from tasked elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison, and identifies any information shortfall from the original EEI's requested.
- .2____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .3____ Analyzes information to isolate significant elements with respect to the mission and operations of the command.
- .4____ Integrates the collected information with other information to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities which might influence the missions of the command.
- .5____ Interprets information to determine significance, and forms logical conclusions which can serve as the basis for determining the effects on the current intelligence estimate.
- .6____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .7____ Determines form of presentation and selects the means of transmission.
- .8____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent intelligence support to all elements of the RLT.
- .9____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the MEB target list.

- .10____ Submits timely and pertinent intelligence reports to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.
- .11____ Submits all required intelligence reports of a periodic nature to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.5 PLAN FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The RLT has been alerted to an political situation that requires deployment/employment of the MEB. The MEB is awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. (A) CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established a SACC. (A) The RLT's FSCC will coordinate fires once established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Begins initial planning upon receipt of the earning order utilizing the factors of METT-T.
- .2____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to the S-2 requesting intelligence/combat information on the area of operations, enemy, and weather.
(See Task: 7B.2.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT.)
- .3____ Advises the RLT commander on how best to use available fire support assets, and maintains constant coordination with the S-2/3.
- .4____ Identifies communication circuit requirement to CEO.
- .5____ Prepares the fire support estimate of supportability.
- .6____ Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver and/or plan of defense, effectively integrating fire support into the plan.
- .7____ Recommends priorities of fires, the allocation of assets, (A) establishment of artillery ashore, weapons constraints to provide for future operations, and guidance on the attack of specific targets.
- .8____ Recommends the allocation of available fire support to support maneuver elements, counterfire, interdiction, rear area security, and SEAD fires.
- .9____ Identifies any ammunition and target restrictions, ROE restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of artillery, NGF, and air support.
- .10____ Recommends assignment of priority of fires for each supporting arm.
- .11____ Considers the effect of emergency defense of the ATF/AAA and rear area security contingency requirements on aircraft, NGF, and air defense assets.
- .12____ Provides advice on the desired effects on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available, i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy.
- .13____ Determines the NGF capabilities of the ships assigned to support the GCE; i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
- .14____ Analyzes the targets to determine how much of what type ordnance is required to destroy, neutralize, or suppress them.
- .15____ Develops NGF, air, and artillery estimates of fire support requirements.
- .16____ Consolidates overall RLT requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-46

- .17____ Submits a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
- .18____ Submits overall RLT requirements for air, NGF, and artillery to the MEB in a timely manner.
- .19____ Coordinates the recommended assignment of NGF missions; i.e., DS or GS.
- .20____ Makes adjustments to preliminary plans in the event that a shortfall of fire support means cannot be supported from either organic or outside assets.
- .21____ Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace to include authority to change the priority and instructions for conflict resolution.
- .22____ Plans SEAD fires when air requests are made for targets in the vicinity of known or suspected SAM or AAA defenses.
- .23____ Consolidates and integrates subordinate elements' fire support plans into the RLT's plan.
- .24____ (A) Coordinates the schedule of landing beach preparation fires to include procedures for adjusting the delivery of NGF in relation to the movement of assault craft and the determination of safety limits.
- .25____ Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
- .26____ Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the RLT commander for approval.
- .27____ Publishes the RLT fire support plan as separate supporting appendixes (air, artillery, NGF) to the operations annex of the operation order.
- .28____ Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as the zones of action, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, areas for neutralization fires, and targets designated for destruction, and fire support coordination measures.
- .29____ Considers logistics needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
- .30____ Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
- 31.____ Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
- 32.____ In coordination with the G-2, plans for and ensures that Restrictive Fire Measures (RFM) are prepared in support of intelligence collection assets operating forward of the FEBA.
- .33____ Develops procedures for a rapid targeting response to intelligence on significant enemy targets.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT

This concept provides guidance in the following area:

1. General targets or areas which are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver or be prepared to deliver fires.
2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation.
3. Exclusive or exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or accomplishing a particular task.

4. Whether or not a preparation is to be fired and, if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires.
 5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).
 6. For artillery, in general terms, the time and place of landing.
-

TASK: 7B.2.6 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The RLT has been alerted to a political situation that requires an amphibious landing. The MEB is in transit awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF, and has established an SACC. The RLT's FSCC will coordinate fires when established ashore.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Erasures the FSCC is staffed and equipped by representatives from each fire support asset supporting the RLT.
- .2____ Each liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and imitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
- .3____ Plans for collocating DASC near FSCC when established ashore.
- .4____ Ensures procedures are established to provide LAAD representation in the FSCC, appropriate to mission status assigned LAAD.
- .5____ Establishes methods to disseminate, in a timely and continuous manner, that information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
- .6____ Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
- .7____ Assigns fire support personnel to accord any the advance force to include observation requirements.
- .8____ Coordinates with the ACE to identify and disseminate armament codes to be used.
- .9____ Ensures procedures are in place to alert units to changing weather conditions as information is acquired from the CLF/CATF.
- .10____ Monitors the concurrent development of air and OF plans by the SACC, and the targeting process.
- .11____ Establishes procedures to ensure requests for preplanned air and NGF are made through the appropriate channels in a timely manner, recorded and staffed to avoid duplication, and examined to ensure proper weapons selection.
- .12____ Coordinates procedures to ensure the timely receipt of the daily ATO.
- .13____ Determines requirement for distribution of ATO, and formulates procedures so subordinate units can receive or verify ATO information without a paper copy of the ATO.
- .14____ Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications and retransmission/relay requirements.
- .15____ Maintains the status of all fire support assets.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.7 COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITIONS(S): The MEB commander has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked air and AGE, and has established an SACC. (A) The RLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Joint ordination measures are required to effectively maximize the support available to the landing force.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Recommends and implements permissive and restrictive fire support coordination measures, and those maneuver control measures that best facilitate maneuver actions, and provides safeguards to protect friendly units.
- .2____ Resolves coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets, firing positions for artillery, and fire support areas for NGF ships.
- .3____ Coordinates the GCE recommendations to the MEB for establishment of a fire support coordination line (FSCL) for each day.
- .4____ Coordinates the attack of targets in which the effects extend beyond unit boundaries.
- .5____ Coordinates with the MEB FSC to clear the attack of targets located outside the RLT boundaries or within the constraints imposed by other FSC measures.
- .6____ Maintains and disseminates a (list of civilian population concentrations, and places protected by the law of war.
- .7____ Plans airspace coordination with aviation planners and implements procedures for exchanges of the minimum required firing information; i.e., from/to coordinates, time schedule (from/to), and attitude.
- .8____ Establishes an air control agency (ACA), if required.
- .9____ Prepares coordinating instructions for the coordination and control of supporting arms.
- .10____ Provides input to the ACE for the preparation of a pilot/controllers handbook.
- .11____ Coordinates with other fire support agencies to acquire tentative clearances, as required.
- .12____ Uses various aids to help in fire support planning and coordination; e.g., fire support responsibilities matrix, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, other support plans.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.8 DEVELOP TARGETS AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE

CONDITION(S): The MEB commander has issued general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGFA, and has established an SACC. (A) The RLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Coordination with the G-2/3 is continuous.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Exploits all targeting assets available to the GCE, and requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the MEB as well as nonorganic assets.
- .2____ Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the collection effort.
- .3____ Integrates lists of targets from subordinate units and augments these targets with others whose destruction or neutralization is considered vital the RLT. (KI)
- .4____ Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage or casualties, and considers extent of collateral injury to the non-combatant population.
- .5____ Establishes targeting procedures that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares nominations for the ATF target list and forwards them to the MEB.
- .6____ Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
- .7____ Records target data on target cards, overlays, and other records.
- .8____ Coordinates inputs to a common target designation system which will be published by the MEB/ATF.
- .9____ Utilizes a target precedence list or the target value analysis (TVA) methodology including TVA spreadsheets arch target sheets.
- .10____ Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifies on to the target list to include changes in the fire support means requested.
- .11____ Considers close and deep targets.
- .12____ Develops programs of targets for counterfire, countermechanized, and SEAD fires, as appropriate.
- .13____ Coordinates procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information with the S-2.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TARGET PRIORITIES

Generally targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission. Specifically, priorities are given those targets that can:

1. Prevent the execution of the plan - Priority 1.
 2. Seriously interfere with the plan - Priority 2.
 3. Cause serious interference later - Priority 3.
 4. Cause limited interference - Priority 4.
-

TASK: 7B.2.9 PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S):

1. CATF has issued the general policy guidance as to the targets to be attacked by air and NGF and has established an SACC. (A) The RLT's FSCC will coordinate fires ashore. Intelligence information has been acquired, and prioritized lists of targets have been forwarded.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Makes recommendations for the landing of artillery early in the assault if appropriate to the tactical situation.
- .2____ Makes recommendations for the operational employment of RPV's for reconnaissance, target acquisition, and damage assessments in coordination with the S-2/3.
- .3____ Ensures planned artillery positions so support the scheme of maneuver and are suitable for artillery operations.
- .4____ Submits recommendations for the establishment of fire support station(s) (FSS), fire support area(s) (FSA), and zones of fire for NGF support ships.
- .5____ Integrates the plan for the delivery of NFG with helicopter approach lanes and fixed-wing routes into, and out of, the AOA.
- .6____ Recommends allocation of FPF's.
- .7____ Ensures adequate artillery ammunition is available and allocated to provide adequate support.
- .8____ Integrates the fire support plan with the anti-mechanized plan.
- .9____ Determines the requirement to register any fire support assets, and makes recommendations to the GCE.
- .10____ Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams equipped with laser designators.
- .11____ Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priorities.
- .12____ Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
- .13____ Provides schedules of fire support requested to subordinate elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B 2.10 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The MEB is currently awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, and EW capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Reviews communications SOP, operations order/plan, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .2____ Participates in the MEB's communications coordination conference to identify GCE communications requirements, and to obtain technical and administrative instructions.
- .3____ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability for each CA considered by the GCE.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4___ Requests message distribution per the procedures contained in the SOP for communication.
- .5___ Configures the communications system to allow for systems control and technical control.
- .6___ Plans for communications redundancy and identifies alternate means of communications.
- .7___ Coordinates the employment of various types of radios to ensure reliable communications by providing multiple communications paths, and divergent portions of the frequency spectrum.
- .8___ Based on commander's guidance, and guidance from the CEO coordinates the use and allocation of COMSEC equipment and materials.
- .9___ Plans for the establishment of communications with outside agencies, as directed.
- .10___ Conducts liaison with MEB/shipboard communications planners.
- .11___ (A) Submits the GCE prioritization and allocation of shipboard communications asset requirements to the MEB and/or embarked ship's communications officer.
- .12___ Coordinates the use and location of deck mounted radios with the ship's communication officer.
- .13___ Plan activation of communications to support command activities during each phase of the operation.
- .14___ Submits frequency requirements for operations, rehearsal, COMMEX, and/or CPX to the MEB CEO.
- .15___ Identifies interoperability problems with MEB, adjacent, and subordinate commands.
- .16___ Coordinates with subordinate units to ensure required connectivity is planned.
- .17___ Coordinates the preparation of the ASC-26 with the ACE for the GCE's use.
- .18___ Publishes and disseminates the comm plan in a timely manner.
- .19___ Determines/requests HF frequency propagation for all operating areas.
- .20___ Requests any known geographic and climatic communications limitations.
- .21___ Develops communications contingency plan.
- .22___ Develops a COMSEC plan and coordinates with the MEB CEO to monitor COMSEC and provides friendly taboo and protected frequency requirements.
- .23___ Ensures communications discipline measures are adhered to during planning, and all subsequent phases of the operation.
- .24___ Plans manual and ground retransmission sites as well as aerial retransmission, using both organic and theater aircraft, if required.
- .25___ Ensures the communications plan contains secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies that subordinates possess them.
- .26___ Plans for the use of field expedient radio antennas.
- .27___ Coordinates EW and COMSEC requirements/issues with the MEB's, EWO, and CEO.
- .28___ Determines liaison requirements to include; equipment, personnel procedures, and communications.
- .29___ Coordinates with the MEB staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support.
- .30___ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support requirements and assets available.
- .31___ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the planned communication system.

- .32___ Provides for the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .33___ Requests personnel and equipment augmentation (ATF/CHPF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy), if required.
- .34___ Establishes restoration priorities based on the commander's, guidance.
- .35___ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communications plan.
- .36___ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, material handling equipment (MHE), POL, berthing, etc., to the BSSG.
- .37___ Participates in embarkation planning to ensure spread loading, proper off loading, and (A) access to communications gear while embarked.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.11 PLAN SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The RLT has been tasked to conduct an amphibious assault. There is a potential threat from aircraft, helicopterborne assault, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a night vision and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
- .2___ Ensures unit commanders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
- .3___ Evaluates whether the ROE provide sufficient flexibility for the MEB to defend itself against likely threats.
- .4___ Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, the use of barriers, and obstacles.
- .5___ Uses field expedient protective measures against enemy lasers; i.e., concealment, observation techniques, smoke, protective cover, limiting the number of Marines observing, use of NVG's thermal night sights.
- .6___ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7___ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and oncall.
- .8___ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and passive and active air defense coverage.
- .9___ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for all forces.
- .10___ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, observation posts (OP's), listing posts (LP's), and other local security techniques.
- .11___ Ensures all convoys are provided security from ground and air attack.
- .12___ Coordinates the positioning of LAAD units within assigned areas of operation.
- .13___ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures for their notification and transportation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .15____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units; e.g., TRAP, mass casualties, etc.
- .16____ Plans active counterintelligence measures designed to neutralize the hostile multidiscipline intelligence collection effort and efforts toward sabotage, espionage, submersion, and terrorism.
- .17____ Develops passive counterintelligence measures designed to conceal and deny information to the enemy, protect personnel from subversion and terrorism, and protect installations and material against sabotage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.12 PLAN FOR CSS/LOGISTICS

CONDITION(S): The RLT has been tasked to conduct an amphibious assault and is conducting all aspects of planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent CSS requirements.
- .2____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .3____ Prepares, in coordination with the BSSG, the CSS estimates or supportability.
- .4____ Establishes coordination with MEB staff and agencies involved with CSS operations.
- .5____ Reviews requirements for logistic trains.
- .6____ Plans for employment of combat engineers in coordination with G-3.
- .7____ Coordinates with the S-3 in the analysis of the proposed CA's to determine the type units and rough numbers of troops to be committed, priorities for support, requirements for supplies, CSS, equipment densities, distances involved, and the anticipated duration of the operation.
- .8____ Reviews anticipated requirements with the CSSE, to ensure the organic capability of the CSSE to provide the required logistical support.
- .9____ Studies the G-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information on the area to determine climate, weather, terrain population considerations, existing facilities, in country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc. Submits EEL's and OIR's to the S-2 covering gaps in required logistics intelligence.
- .10____ Determines and computes, in coordination with the MEB G-4/BSSG commander, overall logistics requirements for each phase of the type operation being planned.
- .11____ Determines, in coordination with the MEB G-4/BSSG, the types and quantities of supplies to be carried by units as prescribed loads, as well as the types and quantities required for prestaged helicopter lifted supplies and follow-on unloading.
- .12____ (A) Establishes, in coordination with the MEB G-3, ACE, and BSSG, a TACLOG for the ship-to-shore movement.
- .13____ Coordinates with the MEB G-4 and BSSG on a plan for the development of logistics support.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14____ Coordinates with the MEB and CSSE commander in determining the type resupply system to be used; i.e., unit distribution, supply point distribution, and throughput distribution.
- .15____ Determines, in coordination with the MEB staff/surgeon and the BSSG, medical support for the evacuation of casualties.
- .16____ Determines, in coordination with the MEB G-4 and the BSSG, transportation support for the evacuation of casualties.
- .17____ Reviews quantities, types of equipment, and supplies computed by the BSSG that are required for each successive stage of the operation, including their assigned priorities of issue.
- .18____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop the logistics plan.
- .19____ (A) Considers, in coordination with the BSSG, cross decking requirements to support the concept.
- .20____ Reviews the concept of CSS, proposed by the BSSG, and requests any changes required.
- .21____ Allocates supplies to each echelon of the RLT, making each unit self sufficient until it can be resupplied.
- .22____ Considers, in coordination with the BSSG, the enemy threat as it applies to rear area security.
- .23____ Prepares, in coordination with the MEB G-4/BSSG, appropriate annexes to the operations order.
- .24____ Receives legal and claims procedures from the command element for inclusion in the operations order/plan.
- .25____ Reviews the MEB's plan for the development of logistic support ashore.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimate of support ability can be either written or verbal.

KEY INDICATORS: None

TASK: 7B.2.13 PLAN COMBAT ENGINEER SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The RLT is in receipt of the MEB concept of operations and has developed a scheme of maneuver which has been approved.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Reviews, with the engineer officer, engineer SOP, operation order/plan, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .2____ Ensures that engineer plans take into consideration the topography and terrain in the area of operations.
- .3____ Plans, if appropriate, for the phasing sequence of engineer personnel and equipment into the area of operations.
- .4____ Coordinates with the MEB G-4/BSSG on the anticipated consumption rate of engineer supplies.
- .5____ Ensures that the operation plan/order takes into consideration the enemy engineer capability.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.14 (A) PLAN THE LANDING

CONDITION(S): The RLT is in receipt of the MEB concept of operation and has developed a scheme of maneuver which has been approved. Organic helicopter and AAV assets, and landing craft are available within the MEB. The landing can occur during daylight, night time, or periods of limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Determines RLT requirements for the ship-to-shore movement and confirms available organic ships-to-shore assets.
- .2___ Allocates assets for use by subordinate elements, ensuring the allocation provides for the maximum support of the initial tactical operations ashore.
- .3___ Develop a landing plan that is totally integrated with the scheme of maneuver ashore and the fire support plan.
- .4___ Plans for flexibility in the landing of supporting arms, and reserve elements.
- .5___ Considers enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or counter-helicopter borne assaults.
- .6___ Assigns elements one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
- .7___ Coordinates the employment of navigation aids (NAVAIDS) to mark landing sites; e.g., GAIL lights, chemical lights, panels, etc., for both surface and helicopter borne assaults.
- .8___ Completes the landing plan in a timely manner to allow for responsive and accurate embarkation planning or cross decking to occur.
- .9___ Publishes the landing plan as an appendix to the amphibious operations annex to the operation order, or submits input for consolidation into a single MEB order.
- .10___ Develops alternate plans to cover foul weather interference and/or changes in enemy capabilities.
- .11___ Assigns adequate personnel to the TACLOG to advise MEB and Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, and supplies.
- .12___ Develops the EMCON plan in coordination with the MEB CEO.
- .13___ Formulates the communication plan to be used for the linkup of forces ashore.
- .14___ Formulates the plan for the passage of command ashore and the means of communication that will be utilized.
- .15___ Conducts briefings on overall operation/communications plan, schedule of events, COMSEC plan, etc.
- .16___ Briefs staff on communications plan.
- .17___ Uses graphic aids, maps, charts, needling diagrams, alternate route diagrams, etc., when briefing.
- .18___ Conducts preparatory training required on COMSEC equipment and materials.
- .19___ Conducts preoperations inspections, inventory, and operations checks.
- .20___ (A) Ensures the rehearsal plan fully tests the support ability of the communications plan.
- .21___ Validates the requirement for planned ground or air retransmission sites.
- .22___ Verifies compatibility of COMSEC means and procedures.
- .23___ (A) Conducts operational checks of all LF shipboard circuits during the rehearsal.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-56

- .24____ (A) Tests communications terminating in the SACC/TACC/HDC/LFOC/JIC/TACLOG during the rehearsal.
- .25____ Installs communications based on established priorities.
- .26____ (A) Evaluates communications personnel proficiency during the rehearsal.
- .27____ Conducts correct message drafting briefings.
- .28____ Demonstrates procedures for handling high priority messages.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.15 (A) LAND THE LANDING FORCE

CONDITION(S): CATF has issued the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MEB's landing plan developed after the final rehearsal.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Inserts terminal guidance teams Without compromise.
- .2____ Receives reports from the reconnaissance teams inserted prior to H-hour on the enemy situation, LZ briefs, and on their ability to provide ITG support.
- .3____ Provides final intelligence update to combat elements which emphasize critical aspects of the landing, such as the location of antiaircraft and antiboat defensive positions.
- .4____ Conducts a zone information pilot planning order (ZIPPO) brief prior to the helicopter borne assault.
- .5____ Ensures naval control agencies are conducting the movement according to the schedule contained in the landing plan.
- .6____ Monitors the surface borne and helicopter borne movements of units, providing status updates to the MEB commander, as required.
- .7____ Lands, first wave of helicopters and assault craft within 30 seconds of the designated time, at planned LZ/beach.
- .8____ Adheres to EMCON. condition set by the MEB, removing restrictions on radio emissions only on order.
- .9____ Advises MEB and Navy representatives in the SACC to coordinate delivery of air and NGF preparatory fires and shifting of fires as the assault progresses.
- .10____ Employs an SAC(A) to control fire support during the landing.
- .11____ Employs NGF to suppress and neutralize targets.
- .12____ Demonstrates effective counter battery fires.
- .13____ Considers using smoke to screen the movement ashore.
- .14____ AAV's effectively employ smoke to provide self protection, if required.
- .15____ Demonstrates the ability to breach beach obstacles and minefields during the initial phase of the landing.
- .16____ Demonstrates the ability to reduce fortifications by both indirect and direct fires.

- .17___ Uses terrain effectively for cover and concealment.
- .18___ Demonstrates effective terminal aircraft control by FAC teams to include radar beacon forward air control (RABFAC) missions.
- .19___ Demonstrates effective indirect fire control through FO's, ground spotters, and reconnaissance teams.
- .20___ Utilizes attack helicopter assets effectively to support the movement of transport helicopters and ground units.
- .21___ Controls the progress of the landing through issuance of mission type orders, by required, by the developing situation and through allocation of support in response to requests from subordinate elements.
- .22___ Maintains the momentum of the attack.
- .23___ Coordinates the linkup of forces, demonstrating positive communications and fire support coordination.
- .24___ Positions antitank weapons on the flanks and overmatch positions, if required.
- .25___ Maintains reliable communications.
- .26___ Establishes covered communications on those covered nets identified in the CEOI.
- .27___ Coordinates logistic support for assaulting GCE through representation in LSC and SLCC.
- .28___ Maintains dispersion of personnel, equipment, and supplies on the beach and in the LZ's.
- .29___ Coordinates the evacuation of casualties, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.16 CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): Elements of the GCE have conducted an assault. (A) The GCE's FSAC has established itself ashore and is preparing to assume control. (A) The SACC is coordinating the delivery of fires ashore initially.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Maintains current status on the tactical situation, fire support coordination measures in effect, a list of fires to be coordinated, the location of artillery ashore, and NGF ships available.
- .2___ (A) Establishes reliable communications with both subordinate elements and fire support agencies within 30 minutes after arrival on the beach.
- .3___ Requests transfer of responsibility for coordination of supporting fires after communications are established, and phasing control checklists are completed.
- .4___ Assumes responsibility for the overall coordination of air, NGF, and artillery.
- .5___ Clears requests for fire support based on "silence is consent" or unit policy in less than 60 seconds.
- .6___ Coordinates the attack of targets in the priority established in the operation order, or by the commander's changes based on the tactical situation.
- .7___ Utilizes all the fire support measures in the commander's AOR.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .8____ Manages the flow of information In the FSCC so the critical information is exchanged in a timely manner.
- .9____ Displays E.I.'s and OIR's on status boards, maps, and overlays, and, ensures their timely update.
- .10____ Maintains a detailed plot of all friendly positions, activities, particularly the location lead elements, civilian population concentrations, and places protected by the law of war.
- .11____ Maintains restrictive fire measures in support of intelligence collection assets operating forward of the FEBA. (KI)
- .12____ Coordinates the linkup of the supporting arms means with the appropriate fire support team, FAC, NGF spotter, and FO.
- .13____ Clears all missions with adjacent units that have fires impacting in, passing through, or affecting their zone; i.e., smoke and illumination.
- .14____ Monitors the execution of fire missions and air strikes to ensure the requested support is delivered.
- .15____ Selects the most effective/appropriate fire support means to engage preplanned targets.
- .16____ Receives and plots firing data; i.e., location (from/to), time (from/to), and altitude from the firing unit in order to promulgate information to ensure mutual use of airspace.
- .17____ Maintains an overlay of aircraft control points.
- .18____ Disseminates ACA's as required in a timely manner.
- .19____ Demonstrates the ability to coordinate the simultaneous use of different supporting arms by coordinating an air strike and SEAD fires.
- .20____ Adjusts the schedule of fires based on the advance of maneuver units and changes to the scheme of maneuver.
- .21____ Responds quickly to targeting data and immediate fire support requests to coordinate the delivery of fire support on high priority targets.
- .22____ Resolves fire support conflicts between elements of the GCE as well as conflicts between direct air support missions and indirect fire missions.
- .23____ Establishes communications with the artillery, reconnaissance, and command element immediately upon their landing in order to coordinate changes to the fire support plan, as required.
- .24____ Maintains the location of all artillery elements and their firing capabilities.
- .25____ Maintains the status of remaining air sorties allocated, aircraft on call, and status of all preplanned air missions for the next 24 hours.
- .26____ Requests additional fire support from the MEB and supporting forces, if required.
- .27____ Coordinates the movement of direct support ship(s) with the MEB/ATF/CMPF.
- .28____ Monitors the NGF spot nets, relaying requests for fire, if required, and adheres to the "silence is consent" rule unless the tactical situation dictates otherwise.
- .29____ (A) Maintains reliable ship-to-shore radio communications. (KI)
- .30____ Maintains information on ships ammunition status and rotation schedule.
- .31____ Utilizes the air control personnel to aid in the quick response of aircraft to changes in the tactical situation.
- .32____ Ensures counter-battery and counter-mortar fire is available, ready, and on call.
- .33____ Cancels missions if they are no longer required, e.g., target moved/ previously granted clearance is canceled.

- .34_____ Maintains ammunition status information on all artillery and mortar elements.
- .35_____ Identifies shortages of any type of ammunition which could affect operations.
- .36_____ Determines when temporary fire support coordination measures are required, and cancels those no longer required.
- .37_____ Plans fires and aircraft missions in support of future operations and contingency plans in coordination with MEB G-3.
- .38_____ Recommends changes to the fire support coordination line based on changes to the tactics.
- .39_____ Maintains a record of targets fired or, BDA assessed, targets not engaged, and informs the S-2/3 and the command element.
- .40_____ Monitors the Tactical Air Request (TAR) net for information or clearance, if required, on requests for immediate air support.
- .41_____ Designates priority targets for immediate suppression missions, and updates targets as the situation changes.
- .42_____ Determines whether SEAD fires are required based on input from the S-2 and other intelligence sources, and the amount required.
- .43_____ Coordinates the artillery requirement for displacement, time, routes, and distribution with the RLT commander.
- .44_____ Maintains an FSCC journal.
- .45_____ Demonstrates the ability to displace the FSCC by echelon without a loss of control.
- .46_____ Utilizes liaison personnel located in the FSCC effectively.
- .47_____ Provides continuous updates on the current situation to the fire support units.
- .48_____ Utilizes a fire support matrix to manage the execution of the fire support plan.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: Maintain detailed target plot and ship-to-shore communications.

TASK: 7B.2.17 OPERATE A COMMAND POST

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations. Planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the RLT to displace the command post frequently as well as to operate for an extended period in mobile command posts. The enemy has a long range reconnaissance capability in addition to direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft and EW capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Organizes and operates the command post per unit SOP.
- .2_____ Staffs the command post with the executive staff, necessary special staff officers, liaison personnel from attached, adjacent, and supporting units, and supporting personnel.
- .3_____ Organizes personnel, equipment, and vehicles to operate on a 24-hour a day basis.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-60

- .4___ Bases the location of the command post on troop dispositions, routes of communications, communication requirements, type of tactical operations, space required, cover and concealment, and security, etc. (The command post is located well forward in the attack to avoid the requirement for an early displacement and to the rear of the defensive area to avoid a hasty displacement in the event of an enemy penetration.)
- .5___ Identifies alternate locations in the event the command post must be displaced rapidly.
- .6___ Prepares plans for the establishment of alternate command posts per procedures contained in the unit SOP; e.g., seniority list of officers, designation of one of the battalions, and etc.
- .7___ Conducts, at a minimum, one displacement of the command post at night.
- .8___ Employs deceptive measures when planning, preparing, and conducting a command post displacement. (See Task: 7B.1.20 PLAN TACTICAL DECEPTION.)
- .9___ Employs both active and passive security measures; e.g., use of local security patrols, natural cover and concealment, supplementary camouflage, etc.
- .10___ Demonstrates ability to react to a small unit attack.
- .11___ Restricts command post movement and access. (KI)
- .12___ Grounds barbed wire placed around other facilities containing communications equipment to shunt induced voltages to ground to greatly reduce EMI. (KI)
- .13___ Locates generators as far as possible away from the CP/COD, and takes into account impact or induced signals to comm cables, antennas, or other facilities near installation site.
- .14___ Remotes antennas away from command post facilities to counter enemy DF efforts.
- .15___ Selects proper antenna site selection utilizing terrain masking and antenna site selection.
- .16___ Radios and other electronic equipment are properly grounded to reduce susceptibility to noise generating sources.
- .17___ Message handling procedures provide for message accountability, quick distribution per the unit SOP.
- .18___ Disperses facilities, vehicles and equipment, and time permitting digs in, and reinforces positions.
- .19___ Locates dismount points, message drops, and pick-up points, within defended areas.
- .20___ Locates bivouac areas and helicopter LZ's to add depth to local security forces.
- .21___ Positions supply and medical facilities in close proximity to the command post.
- .22___ Uses RG-58 coaxial cable or comparable cable vice WD-1 slash wire on those critical nets where the antennas are remoted from the command post to reduce signal loss through the transmission feed line.
- .23___ Ensures communication signal lines do not cross power lines without proper insulation or are properly spaced when run parallel.
- .24___ Displaces the command post by echelon without a loss of control or degradation of communications.
- .25___ Effectively controls communication in support of the tactical situation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

RESTRICTION AND ACCESS CONTROL PROCEDURES

Entry and exit procedures to the command post area are rigidly enforced. A system which allows thorough screening and protection of U.S. personnel and equipment is instituted. This system is three-tiered at minimum. The first tier consists of signs which controls admittance and posts the rates of speed to vehicles approaching the checkpoint. The second tier, the trigger position, is where searches and identification are conducted. The third tier is where weapons capable of destroying incoming vehicles are located; e.g., TOW, dragon, SMAW, and AT-4. Special orders for each most are established. The last tier, however, has the well-defined mission to destroy, immediately, any vehicle passing the checkpoint without proper authorization.

TASK: 7B.2.18 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations. (A) The RLT of the MEB is ashore as well as elements of the BSSG. (A) The MEB CE and ACE are located onboard ATF shipping. Multi-channel radio circuits have been established to allow for ship-to-shore telephone (unsecure) communications. The commander, based on the enemy's EW capability, has stressed the use of wire throughout the RLT.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Demonstrates the ability to quickly lay and install wire communications movement of units and the establishment of CP's.
- .2____ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for the back-up system.
- .3____ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities, if available.
- .4____ Installs and maintains telephone system according to established priority.
- .5____ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .6____ Identifies back-up system capable of restoring essential services, if required.
- .7____ Engineers telephone switching system to provide for alternate routes, and ensures use of alternate routes are understood by users.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Back-up systems can be as rudimentary as laying a hotline between two units. The important factor is that commanders had a redundant system, and could still pass information if the primary means failed.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.19 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations. The requirement exists to establish communications control within the RLT.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes communication control procedures based on the COMM SOP.
- .2____ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3____ Maintains circuit status.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4___ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5___ Provides the necessary communications to allow for continuous command and control.
- .6___ Receives and prepares communications status reports, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.20 EMPLOY ECCM.

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations. The enemy has an ECM and ESM capability which he has actively employed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Uses terrain masking techniques where practical.
- .2___ Uses only authorized codes.
- .3___ All radio and telecommunications means are secured with encryption devices to the maximum extent possible, utilize authorized op codes/ manual encryption on any unsecured circuit.
- .4___ Radio operators continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness, and send messages by alternate means.
- .5___ Radios are remoted from antennas to the maximum extent practical.
- .6___ Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
- .7___ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
- .8___ Adheres to EMCON conditions.
- .9___ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10___ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope.
- .11___ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12___ Uses daily changing frequencies and call signs on all tactical nets whenever frequency allocations and call sign assignments allow.
- .13___ Reports MIJI per formats and procedures designated.
- .14___ Uses lowest power necessary on radios to provide communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.21 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y: N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2___ Selects and correctly employs proper antennas.
- .3___ Follows correct safety techniques.
- .4___ Follows proper grounding procedures.
- .5___ Follows lost communications procedures.
- .6___ Employs radio retransmission capability, as required.
- .7___ Employs effective equipment power source management.
- .8___ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .9___ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment.
- .10___ Uses equipment record jackets and appropriate TM's.
- .11___ Performs PM's per the applicable TM's.
- .12___ Employs proper ECO techniques.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.22 PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES

CONDITION(S): Elements of the RLT are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the MEB, CE, and ACE. Communications centers and switching stations have been established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Compiles and utilizes communication access lists.
- .2___ Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
- .3___ Adheres to current CMS material directives.
- .4___ Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguard for security of communications spaces are in place.
- .5___ Possesses an EAP appropriate to the threat intelligence.
- .6___ Personnel are knowledgeable of EAP destruction procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-64

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK 7B.2.23 EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX, ETC.)

CONDITION(S): Elements of the RLT are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the MEB CE, the GCE, and the ACE. Terminal equipment is being used to pass essential information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Connectivity between all planned terminal equipment exists.
- .2____ Correctly configures terminal and COMSEC equipment.
- .3____ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .4____ Follows proper grounding techniques.
- .5____ Meets environmental considerations.
- .6____ Establishes restoration procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B .2.24 CONTROL OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the RLT to displace the regimental command post frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of its mobile cot and post. The enemy has a long range reconnaissance capability in addition to direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multi discipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Maintains close and continuous liaison with the MEB and the subordinate units.
- .2____ Maintains friendly and enemy status maps, overlays, charts, etc., required by the unit SOP in an up-to-date manner.
- .3____ Locates principal staff sections to facilitate staff functioning.
- .4____ Controls the maneuver ashore by issuing-mission type orders, assignment of mission objectives, and allocation of resources in response to requests from subordinates.
- .5____ Issues fragmentary orders (FRAGO's) in a timely manner in order to maintain the momentum of the attack and exploit successes on the battlefield.
- .6____ Disseminates intelligence data and other critical information to subordinates immediately after processing.
- .7____ Maintains positive and reliable communications with both higher and subordinates command elements.
- .8____ Forms a forward or jump command group.
- .9____ Operates the combat operations center from an AAVC-7A1 during the day and night, to include at a minimum one displacement.

- .10____ Sufficient communications means are available to permit operations to be controlled on the move and/or at two separate locations such as during displacement.
- .11____ Passes command forward only after the new command post is capable of assuming control and notifies higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate units.
- .12____ Displaces the command post without losing control and without interrupting the progress of the attack, or support to subordinates.
- .13____ Demonstrates the ability to use other communication paths or means to pass critical message traffic when the primary path or means fails.
- .14____ Maintains covered communications on those nets designated in the CEOI.
- .15____ Monitors progress of the battle, shift priority fires, arm request reinforcing fires and support as the situation dictates.
- .16____ Subordinates submit combat reports in a timely manner.
- .17____ Compiles information from subordinates and activities to prepare SITREPS and other required reports.
- .18____ Reports essential items only.
- .19____ Coordinates the logistic support for all elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK 7B.2.25 ORGANIZE COMBAT OPERATIONS CENTER

CONDITION(S): The RLT is conducting tactical operations. A COC has been established. However, planned combat operations and the enemy situation causes the RLT to displace frequently as well as to operate for a period of time out of AAVC-7A1's.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Maintains friendly and enemy status maps, overlays, charts, etc., required by the unit SOP in an up-to-date manner.
- .2____ Internal arrangement of the COC allows for the integration of operations, intelligence, and fire support.
- .3____ Manages information within the COC to ensure required action is taken in a coordinated, thorough, and timely manner, and that an audit trail is maintained.
- .4____ Conducts a detailed brief for oncoming watch standard prior to relief.
- .5____ Employs a method which alerts personnel on watch to changes in the status of communications.
- .6____ Message handling procedures, per the SOP, provides for message accountability and quick distribution.
- .7____ Uses other communication paths or means to pass critical message traffic when the primary path or means fails.
- .8____ SOP contains provisions for the emergency destruction of classified material.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-66

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.2.26 CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The GCE is conducting tactical operations. The enemy is known to possess nuclear and chemical warfare capabilities and have demonstrated their intention to employ NBC attacks in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ GCE possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC attacks and reports required.
- .2___ Establishes back-up command, control, and communication procedures to be used under NBC conditions.
- .3___ Receives NBC reports from subordinate GCE elements or higher command elements when NBC attack is considered probable, or during attack.
- .4___ Alerts all subordinate elements and provides guidance.
- .5___ Provides chemical downwind message every 6 hours of operation to subordinate units.
- .6___ Continues to receive reports from subordinate elements.
- .7___ Provides updates to subordinates as they become available.
- .8___ Provides assistance to subordinates in hasty or deliberate decontamination beyond their capabilities.
- .9___ Advise Commander/S-3 on the effects of an NBC environment on the unit's ability to carry out particular aspects of its mission.
- .10___ Calculate radioactive decay, total dose, transmission factors, optimum time of exit from radioactive contaminated area.
- .11___ Plot estimated downwind chemical hazard utilizing NBC reports.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B 2.27 (A) CONTROL WITHDRAWAL SEAWARD

CONDITION(S): The RLT has received the order to withdraw, return, and board ATF shipping. The withdrawal is administrative; however, the security of forces as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment must be emphasized.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Acknowledges the MEB's order for withdrawal.
- .2___ Establishes priorities for movement of personnel, supplies, equipment, and material seaward.
- .3___ Coordinates fire planning to ensure coverage of all phases of the withdrawal.

- .4_____ Promulgates guidance on personnel accountability and instructions for escape and evasion by any Marines inadvertently left behind during withdrawal.
- .5_____ Ensures rear guard security is planned throughout the withdrawal.
- .6_____ Issues operation order for execution of the withdrawal. (KI)
- .7_____ Facilitates the rearward movement of units through the use of control measures.
- .8_____ Provides update status reports and a final report on completion of amphibious withdrawal to the MEB after accounting for all Marines who were deployed ashore.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WITHDRAWAL OPERATION ORDER

MUST PROVIDE:

- 1. Detailed missions for subordinate elements of MEB.
- 2. Sequence of withdrawal.
- 3. Fire support plan for coverage of withdrawal.
- 4. Designation of embarkation beaches.
- 5. Detailed instructions for embarkation.
- 6. Specific instruction on loading, combat, or administrative (If in doubt, combat load.)
- 7. Designation of control agency on embarkation beaches.
- 8. Schedule for movement to beaches.
- 9. Detailed personnel accountability instructions.

7B.3 AVIATION COMBAT ELEMENT (ACE)

TASK: 7B.3.1 CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL ACE STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in receipt of an initiating directive and has begun planning for deployment/employment operations. The ACE is a generic one-third slice of the wing. The senior aviator is the ACE commander and he directs the initiation of planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ (G,M) Reviews MEB contingency airlift plans for notional task organization(s).
- .2_____ (G,M) Reviews MEB data on prospective AAA to include, port, beach, airfield, airfield facilities, roads, local communications, water, power storage area, and prospective host nation information.
- .3_____ (G,M) Based upon MEB plans, develops generic operational plans to support the MEB's timely off-load and issuance of maritime propositioned equipment and supplies.
- .4_____ (G,M) Provides requested input to the MEB on time phasing, MPF/GPF FIE, and AFOE.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-68

- .5____ (G,M) Provides requested input to the MEB on IMA support for the ACE fixed-wing and helicopter assets.
- .6____ (G,M) Reviews plans for the employment of the IMA deployed via TAVB, strategic MAC airlift strategic sealift, or by a combination of means.
- .7____ Analyzes the mission in the warning order to identify specified and implied tasks.
- .8____ Task organizes an ACE staff for the planning, integration, and control of all organic aviation support provided to the MEB.
- .9____ Receives MEB commander's planning guidance.
- .10____ Analyzes command relationships.
- .11____ Requests recommended EEI's and OIR's from the staff based on gaps in existing intelligence as well as requesting available information on: enemy detection and reaction capabilities; type and location of antiaircraft weapons; force concentrations; enemy ECM and ECCM capabilities; enemy aircraft; weather conditions in the AOR; terrain and L2 conditions; and safe areas. (See Task: 7B.3.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT.)
- .12____ Establishes early liaison with CATF/CINC/CMPF aviation planners and control agencies.
- .13____ Completes scenario dependent estimates of MEB special aviation requirements.
- .14____ Provides advice to the GCE/BSSG representatives during the formulation of the aviation requirements which includes calculations for troop lifts, preplanned CAS, air interdiction targets, aerial reconnaissance, air defense assets, illumination, CSC flights, and logistic support needs to support operations plan contingencies. (KI)
- .15____ Prepares aviation estimates of support ability for all operations assigned, and identifies any limitations or problem areas. (KI)
- .16____ Coordinates with the ATF/MPF for procedures to control MEB aviation use during all the phases of advanced operations, emergency defense of the ATF, amphibious operations, and subsequent operations ashore.
- .17____ Convenes air requirements and coordination conference, and submits for MEB's approval, recommended air apportionment guidance. (KI)
- .18____ Requests additional air support from CVBG or land based assets through the MEB command element if air requirements indicate inadequate MEB aviation resources.
- .19____ Plans downed aircraft procedures, and ensures dissemination by operations order or SOP.
- .20____ Coordinates with the GCE to develop fire support and SEAD integration procedures to be used in conjunction with close air support and assault support missions.
- .21____ Coordinates LAAD and LAAM employment based on MEB requirements and threat intelligence.
- .22____ Determines basing options ashore for aviation assets to include the control sites, expeditionary air fields (EAF's), or remote sites, if required.
- .23____ Plans amount of bulk fuel required throughout the operation to include shore based storage locations, if required. (See Task: 7B.3.4 PLAN ACE LOGISTICS.)
- .24____ Identifies security requirements with the GCE/BSSG for personnel or equipment augmentation.
- .25____ Determines ammunition, bombs, rockets, and missiles required, by type, to support operations.
- .26____ Coordinates all communications requirements with the MEB CEO to include frequencies, encryption hardware/software, and authentication materials.
- .27____ Preplans TRAP and CSAR augmentation with the ATF, and ground augmentation requirements with the GCE.
- .28____ Prior to flight operations, considers requesting/scheduling a preplanned weather reconnaissance for weather confirmation using established weather criteria as the guide.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .29_____ Coordinates for MEB approval, a matrix for mission and weather GO/NO GO criteria with the supported unit and the assigned mission commander.
- .30_____ Plans combat intelligence update methods to ensure aircrews/stinger fire teams/hawk fire units have the latest available information.
- .31_____ Prepares those portions of the operations plans for which the ACE has staff cognizance or staff input.
- .32_____ Provides specific aviation planning consideration so the ATF/MPF, MEB, GCE, and BSSG for inclusion into their planning and/or operations orders.
- .33_____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate aviation elements to include warning, reporting, detection, decontamination, exposure guidance, casualty handling, and required MOPP conditions based on MEB guidance.
- .34_____ Provides continual guidance to subordinate elements throughout the planning phase by issuing SOP's, Op Orders, directives, memorandums, or outline plans, and hosting staff conferences and informal briefings.
- .35_____ Ensures, prior to all missions, that safety items are briefed per NATOPS briefing guides and SOP's .
- .36_____ Ensures that a plan is developed to have aircrews receive intelligence briefings prior to and upon return from missions.
- .37_____ Establishes a means and a policy for aircrews to send in-flight reports of enemy activity to the ACE intelligence section.
- .38_____ Coordinates with the MEB CEO any unique communication requirements needing external support.
- .39_____ Plans for adequate field ammunition storage and handling.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimate of support ability can be either verbal or written.

KEY INDICATORS:

INITIAL ESTIMATE OF LF AVIATION REQUIREMENTS

This initial estimate is prepared as soon as preliminary information on the assigned mission is available and is based, on an already existing contingency planning framework. This initial estimate may only include, the number and type of aircraft, the control agencies necessary, and the logistic support required. (Forces and assets available may be limited by other contingency requirements.) Some of the air support allocations can be deduced from the aviation capabilities of the force involved, estimates of enemy air, and the general mission of the LF.

AVIATION ESTIMATE OF SUPPORT ABILITY

FMFM 5-1, Appendix A, provides a sample format. The purpose of this appendix is to summarize significant aviation impacts on any CA proposed. The estimate is prepared by the Tactical Air Commander assisted by his staff and subordinate aviation elements. The estimate, at a minimum, provides the following:

1. Which contemplated CA's can best be supported by the ACE.
2. The salient disadvantages of less desirable CA's.
3. Significant aviation (to include C3) limitations and problems of an operational or logistical nature.
4. Measures that can be taken to resolve existing aviation problems to include requesting additional theater assets.

ESTIMATE OF AIR SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS

The detailed planning of landing force aviation requirements commences after the MEB commander issues his concept of operations. The document is prepared by the ACE, and follows the sequence of general requirements totals, Pre D-day, D-day, and Post D-day, and other requirements affecting aviation. The document includes:

1. Number of aviation assets required by type.
2. Amount of bulk fuel necessary to support the aviation element.
3. Amount of ordnance required by type.
4. Number of landing craft and amphibious vehicles required by type to move ground based assets ashore (LAAD, LAAM, airfield services, and air control augmentation).
5. Amount of special equipment required by type, organic and otherwise (slings, winches, litters, etc.).

TASK: 7B.3.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB is in receipt of an initiating directive and has begun planning for deployment/employment operations. The ACE requires updated and complete intelligence information to carry out their support efforts. (A) The MEB and the CATF/CMPF have agreed to form a JIC, and are receiving both organic and theater source information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary aviation intelligence estimate upon receipt of the initiating directive. (KI)
- .2____ Prepares a detailed aviation intelligence estimate upon receipt of the ACE commander's guidance.
- .3____ Makes early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers and subordinate elements to prepare their estimates.
- .4____ Recommends, based upon input from the staff, EEI's and OIR's, of the aviation combat element as a whole.
- .5____ Phrases the commander's EEI(s) and OIR(s) for forwarding to the MEB in the form of simple, concise directives consisting of three parts: a positive directive, qualifying questions, and statements directing special attention.
- .6____ Recommends a priority of effort to satisfy intelligence requirements based on the situation and guidance given.
- .7____ Determines ACE requirements for maps, charts, photographs, and other graphic aids, and plans for dissemination to subordinates.
- .8____ Coordinates with the MEB G-2 to plan Pre D-day aerial photography support for the MEB, and requests CATF/CMPF assistance for those missions beyond organic capabilities.
- .9____ Coordinates with the MEB G-2 for a dynamic aviation intelligence collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, debriefs of all flights, and rapid dissemination of information to higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements.
- .10____ Uses the collection plan as a basis for issuing orders and requests to collection agencies.
- .11____ Submits requests for intelligence to the (A) JIC, or through them to higher, adjacent, and supported commands.
- .12____ Assists the MEB in developing a reconnaissance and surveillance plan to include sensor delivery, and submits requests to CATF/CHPF for those missions requiring nonorganic agencies support.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .13____ Provides input to the MEB intelligence annex that defines the manner in which the intelligence operations of the ACE will be conducted.
- .14____ Coordinates with the MEB G-2/collection agencies in the preparation of aviation tasking assignments to provide advice on the feasibility of aviation tasks and to provide for maximum lead time.
- .15____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison, and sends information to higher HQ's and subordinate units.
- .16____ Develops and maintains a complete enemy air OOB.
- .17____ Coordinates the fusion of all collected information to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities and intentions which might influence the ACE missions.
- .18____ Coordinates requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, useability of form, pertinence, and security of gathered information with the ACE S-3.
- .19____ Determines form of presentation and in coordination with the S-3 and CEO selects the means of transmission for aviation intelligence information gathered.
- .20____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent aviation intelligence support within capabilities to all elements of the MEB.
- .21____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the MEB/CATF/CMPF target list to include the enemy's C3 structure.
- .22____ Provides forecasted weather information and lunar illumination to S-3/subordinate elements for use in mission planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

PRELIMINARY INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

The primary purpose of the preliminary estimate is to furnish the commander with sufficient intelligence to formulate basic decisions and to assist him in issuing planning guidance.

INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE

Estimating intelligence is a continuous process that begins immediately after receipt of the initiating directive and continues throughout all phases of the operation. Initial aspects of this estimate are concerned with characteristics of the terrain in the AAA/objective area; anticipated weather and conditions at the time projected deployment/employment; the location, characteristics and composition of available landing sites; the general strength, disposition, and composition of enemy forces in the objective area; and the location of civilian population concentrations, and places protected by the law of war. This estimate must also be concerned with the following four basic intelligence tasks:

1. Direction of intelligence effort.
2. Collection.
3. Processing information into intelligence.
4. Dissemination of intelligence.

The intelligence estimate is normally written if planning time allows. The subsequent or running estimates made as the operation progresses are generally called for on short notice, and are normally based on such a small amount of new material that the estimate is presented orally, supported perhaps by a situation map and notes. However, these changes are incorporated into the basic continuing estimate as soon as possible.

TASK: 7B.3.3 PPOCESS AND DISSEMINATE INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The ACE has published a collection plan and has begun to receive reports from tasked elements.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison, and identifies any information shortfall from the original EEL's requested.
- .2____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .3____ Analyzes information to isolate significant elements with respect to the mission and operations of the command.
- .4____ Integrates the collected information with other information to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities which might influence the missions of the command.
- .5____ Interprets information to determine significance, and forms logical conclusions which can serve as the basis for determining the effects on the current intelligence estimate.
- .6____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, useability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .7____ Determines form of presentation and selects the means of transmission.
- .8____ Provides responsive, timely, and pertinent intelligence support to all elements of the ACE.
- .9____ Provides, in coordination with the S-3, input to the MEB target list.
- .10____ Submit timely and pertinent intelligence reports to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.
- .11____ Submit all required intelligence reports of a periodic nature to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.4 PLAN ACE LOGISTICS

CONDITION(S): The MEB has begun planning for deployment/employment operations. The ACE Commander has directed the initiation of ACE logistics planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Attends all logistics planning meetings of higher and adjacent command elements to determine requirements and establish points of contact.
- .2____ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent logistics requirements.
- .3____ Reviews existing contingency logistics plans, SOP's, and lessons learned.
- .4____ Establishes coordination with MEB/ATF/MPF/BSSG elements involved in CSS operations.
- .5____ Coordinates with the S-3 in the analysis of the proposed CA's to determine the subordinate elements helicopters, AV-8's, LAAD, air support element, and rough numbers of troops committed ashore, the commander's priorities for support, requirements for supplies, BSSG augmentation, equipment densities, distances involved, and the anticipated duration of the operation.

- .6_____ Reviews anticipated requirements with the BSSG, to include FARP/FOB sites for follow-on missions after the (A) ship-to-shore movement, to ensure the organic capability of the BSSG to provide requested logistical support (engineering, fuel distribution, rations, medical supplies, ammo storage, etc.).
- .7_____ Studies the S-2's estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy and information on the area to determine climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, in country transportation means, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc.
- .8_____ Submits EEI's and OIR's to S-2 to cover gaps in required logistics intelligence.
- .9_____ Coordinates with the MEB G-4 and BSSG, the overall logistics requirements for each phase of the type operation being planned.
- .10_____ Determines, in coordination with the MEB G-4/BSSG, the type and quantities of supplies to be carried by units as prescribed loads, as well as the types and quantities required for prestaged helicopter lifted supplies and follow-on unloading.
- .11_____ Coordinates a plan for the development of logistic, support for the ACE, or any element(s) that the ACE might move ashore.
- .12_____ Coordinates with the MEB/ATF/CMPF/BSSG in determining the type resupply system to be used; i.e., push/pull, supply points, etc.
- .13_____ Coordinates with the MEB/ATF/CMPF/BSSG in determining resupply distribution points for all requirements, to include fuels, ordnance, food, etc.
- .14_____ Determines, in coordination with MEB surgeon and BSSG, medical support required for the evacuation of casualties.
- .15_____ Uses standardized procedures contained in SOP's to develop the logistic plan.
- .16_____ (A) Considers, in coordination with the GCE/BSSG, cross-decking requirements to support the concept of operations.
- .17_____ Reviews the concept of CSS proposed by the MEB G-4/BSSG, and requests any changes/additions required.
- .18_____ Prepares ACE logistics input to the MEB's operations order.
- .19_____ Coordinates with the S-3 to ensure initial issues to aircrew/ACE elements are sufficient until they can be resupplied.
- .20_____ Provides continuous liaison/interface with the MEB's G-4/ATF logistics representatives to ensure support for the needs of subordinate ACE elements.
- .21_____ Coordinates and provides logistic reports required by higher command elements.
- .22_____ Coordinates with the MEB G-4 to determine feasibility of contracted services, if available or applicable.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.5 PLAN AVIATION COMMAND AND CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The ACE is in receipt of the initiating directive and a self-deploying aircraft control center has been established. The ACE staff is augmented by an MACG detachment for planning. Information on the MEB's task organization, the expected threat, aviation asset availability, and the commander's probable CA's have been given. Personnel are tasked to develop those portions of the operations order that the ACE has staff cognizance over.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (G,M) Establishes a movement control center to coordinate staging, movement, and marshalling.
- .2____ (G,H) Requests MHE, transportation, and other requirements to MEB's logistic movement coordination center (LMCC) that cannot be provided by the ACE.
- .3____ (G,M) Reports to the MEB ACE unit/detachment readiness status for movement to the LMCC.
- .4____ (G,M) Provides augmentation Marines to the air movement coordination center (AMCC).
- .5____ Formulates MEB aviation planning, and provides liaison representatives to the ATF/CINC/MPF agencies which exercise control of aviation assets allocated to support the deployment/landing force.
- .6____ Integrates and coordinates communications support requirements with the MEB and ATF/CINC/MPF air control agencies, to include frequency requirements, voice security devices, and authentication materials.
- .7____ Plans for aerial radio relay or retransmission.
- .8____ Coordinates the integration of MEB air control assets into the overall ATF C3 network (i.e., LAAD, LAAM, ATC, and air support coordination capability).
- .9____ Recommends control measures for approval and inclusion in MEB and ATF/CINC/MPF operations orders to include control points, handover points, and RTF procedures.
- .10____ Plans and coordinates procedures to integrate fire support capabilities (NGF, artillery, mortars) with the aviation tactics selected.
- .11____ Plans, coordinates, and/or recommends airspace management procedures to integrate RPV's with the aviation tactics selected.
- .12____ Participates, with other ATF agencies, in the development and publishing of the ATO, and disseminates ATO to subordinate and supported elements.
- .13____ Recommends an ATO format for fixed-wing and helicopter tasking that allows for complete mission information (location, control agencies, routing, frequencies, ordnance, timing, etc.) without reference to other documents.
- .14____ Ensures requesting units and the MEB G-3 are promptly informed of any missions that cannot be filled due to lack of assets.
- .15____ Identifies needs for airborne control agencies; i.e., TAC(A), FAC(A), and/or HC(A), as required. Requests outside assistance if none is locally available for a particular mission assignment.
- .16____ (A) Coordinates procedures, with the GCE and SACC, to mark targets and provide landward terminal control for OAS/assault support aircraft.
- .17____ Coordinates and participates in any required FAC party training with the GCE.
- .18____ Establishes procedures for the coordination of ITG with reconnaissance/advance elements.
- .19____ Publishes the requirement to have helicopter landing diagram(s), and coordinates HST procedures to be used.
- .20____ Ensures authority and procedures to change LZ's or ingress/egress routes are clearly established in the operations order or SOP's.

- .21____ (A) Provides input to air defense control measures (CAP positions, RTF procedures, MEZ's, et al), to include allocations, to the CLF/CATF prior to establishing the AOA.
- .22____ Coordinates allocation of general and direct support LAAD assets to provide short range air defense for the MEB commander's approval.
- .23____ Plans contingencies in response to possible degradation or destruction of MEB/AFF/MPF C3 assets.
- .24____ (A) Plans movement of C3 capabilities ashore, if required to support the scheme of maneuver by publishing a "phasing control ashore" checklist.
- .25____ Develops a pilot/controllers handbook which details communication frees and color codes, alternate or divert airfields, ordnance codes, code words, available NAVAID's, control measures, ROE, restrictive measures, CAS brief form, abbreviated maps, and airfield diagrams for all aircrews.
- .26____ Develops procedures to keep the MEB/ACE, and supported units aware of current operational aviation support efforts.
- .27____ Attends/recommends joint briefing be held for joint/combined air control and fire support agencies, to include; SACC, HDC, ACE, composite MAG, AO, and TACP personnel prior to employment in order to reconfirm air control measures to be used.
- .28____ Coordinates with MEB CEO any unique communication requirements needing external support.
- .29____ Ensures requisite CMS materials are on hand, coordinating with MEB CEO the acquisition of any shortfalls.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.6 PLAN ANTIAIR WARFARE

CONDITION(S): A CVBG, or land-based aircraft, will provide additional aviation assets for the requirements as delineated by the CINC/CATF/CLF. It is imperative that air superiority be established in the area of operations to permit the conduct of LF operations at a given time and place without prohibitive interference by the opposing force. The ACE tasks organic assets, and coordinates outside requirements with the ATF through the MEB staff, based on the priorities set by the MEB commander.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Gain MEB approval for allocation of AAW assets.
- .2____ Coordinates with joint AAW planners to integrate ACE offensive and defensive AAW capabilities and requirements into the AAW campaign plan.
- .3____ Coordinates ATF/MPF emergency defense plans for AV-8's, AH-1's, and LAAD, and submits recommendations to the MEB (KI)
- .4____ Ensures emergency defense of ATF/MPF alert procedures are disseminated throughout ACE down to aircrews.
- .5____ Ensures ATF/MPF control procedures are known by aircrews and LAAD gunners.
- .6____ Provides ATF/MPF airborne control frequencies to alert cress prior to launch.
- .7____ Develops aviation "scatter plan" for use if the ATF/MPF comes under attack.
- .8____ Coordinates with joint/combined planners for the establishment of AAW ROE, fighter engagement zones, missile engagement zones, earning conditions, arm weapons conditions, and ensure dissemination to subordinates.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-76

- .9____ Ensures EEL's and OIR's concerning the capabilities and locations of enemy air facilities (offensive and defensive) in the objective area, as well as their ECM and ECCM capabilities, are requested from the G-2 and passed down to the users.
- .10____ Identifies MEB offensive AAW targets, analyzes and prioritizes the targets for attack, and after MEB approval passes the information to the ATF/MPF to include in the integrated target list.
- .11____ Recommends updated Offensive Antiair Warfare (OAAW) targets based on current intelligence information.
- .12____ Requests external assets (theater, land-based) to strike MEB OAAW targets, if required.
- .13____ Develops MEB defensive AAW requirements to counter enemy air operations.
- .14____ Coordinates the development of an integrated air defense plan for the MEB that maximizes integration and effectiveness of both airborne and ground based AAU assets.
- .15____ (A) Coordinates with the CATF AAW planners to ensure command representation in the appropriate afloat control facilities (SACC, TACC, CIC, and Air Defense Zone Commander (ADZC).
- .16____ Plans for integration of passive air defense to include the use of cover, concealment, deception, dispersion, and protective construction.
- .17____ Calculates the number of general and direct support LAAD assets required to provide low altitude air defense for the MEB.
- .18____ (A) Coordinates with the ATF/MPF AAW planners to ensure LAAD command representation in the appropriate afloat control facilities.
- .19____ Calculates numbers of aircraft required for AAW mission areas and direct support escort of helicopterborne forces.
- .20____ Plans procedures for the timely transmission of early warning information from the ATF/MPF assigned AAWC/ADZC to the LAAD teams deployed ashore through their element commander, and visual reports from the deployed LAAD teams backup to the Force Antiair Warfare Commander (FAAWC)/Sector Antiair warfare Commander (SAAWC).
- .21____ (A) Establishes LAAD communications requirements, and coordinates these requirements with the ATF/MPF planners to ensure that LAAD command (LC) terminates with the AAWC/ADZC and the LAAD weapons control (LWC) net terminates in the SACC.
- .22____ Ensures dissemination of EMCON standards to subordinate elements.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EMERGENCY DEFENSE

MAGTF assets are not included in the planning for the routine defense of the ATF/MPF as that function is provided by their own weapons systems or pre-planned CVBG cover. In an emergency, landing force aviation assets may be used as a final option for ATF/MPF defense when:

- 1. Increasing tensions, intelligence, or defense conditions indicate an attack is imminent, or the ATF/MPF is under actual attack.
- 2. The governing ROE permit the intercept or engagement of aircraft/boats of forces declared hostile.
- 3. Other circumstances or situations occur so that the CATF/CMPF and CLF agree that an emergency exists.

TASK: 7B.3.7 PLAN ASSAULT SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): A daily conference is held to coordinate and schedule all MEB air support requirements for the next 24 hours. Assault support includes vertical assault airlift, fixed-wing air delivery of cargo or battlefield illumination, in-flight refueling, and air evacuation. Elements of the MEB are determining their requirements for future operations, and will submit assault support requests prior to the conference. When feasible, the conference is attended by representatives from the subordinate elements of the MEB and (A) a representative from the embarked TACRON and HDC.

STANDARDS: EYAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Calculates sorties available for assault support, and provides this information to GCE/BSSG and MEB.
- .2_____ Coordinates with GCE representatives (i.e., air officer) to assist them in determining their assault support requirements at least 12 hours prior to their required operational activity.
- .3_____ Coordinates with BSSG representatives to assist them in determining their logistical support requirements, including air evacuation of casualties, 12 hours prior to operational activity.
- .4_____ Submits the agreed to prioritized list of all assault support requirements to the MEB for approval.
- .5_____ Receives MEB approved assault support requirements and, based on the priorities assigned, begins developing detailed planning.
- .6_____ Coordinates requirements for airframe configuration required to support special missions (i.e., litters to meet MEDEVAC tasking, etc.).
- .7_____ Coordinates with the MEB/ATF/MPF staffs to identify medical facilities appropriate for the delivery of MEDEVAC patients.
- .8_____ Recommends LZ's to the MEB/GCE, as well as alternates, based on the zone(s) of action and threat analysis.
- .9_____ Determines distance and fuel requirements and identifies the need for aerial refueling, FARP's, LZSA's, and/or forward sites.
- .10_____ Determines the requirements for navigation/pathfinder aircraft as well as escort aircraft for troop lifts, and requests outside assistance, if required (CVBG or theater land based assets [e.g., E2, E3]).
- .11_____ Coordinates takeoff, rendezvous, en route, and recovery time factors in consonance with subordinate elements, and provides the information to the supported unit(s) and MEB.
- .12_____ Provides terrain masking and threat avoidance information, based on a detailed terrain analysis and available intelligence, to subordinate elements for primary/alternate route planning.
- .13_____ Ensures the SOP establishes the method for supported units to request additional immediate assault support, and disseminates those procedures by recommended input to the MEB operations order.
- .14_____ Requests forecasted weather and lunar illumination when planning day/night operations.
- .15_____ Ensures procedures are established for safe flight separation during ingress/egress, and deconfliction with the GCE/ATF/MPF during the delivery of other supporting arms (NGF, artillery, CAS aircraft, or RPV's).
- .16_____ Coordinates the integration of mission control points with the ATF/MPF control agencies (HDC, TACC, SACC), and disseminates the updated information to subordinate elements.
- .17_____ (A) Coordinates shipboard troop loading and refueling/rearming cycles with the ATF.
- .18_____ Develops code words to identify compaction of critical mission phases and coordinates them with the MEB.
- .19_____ Provides guidance to ensure the aviation mission commander and ground element commander are in the same aircraft during critical mission phases, if feasible.

- .20___ Coordinates emergency extraction plan with the MEB and GCE.
- .21___ Develops contingency plans for landing at alternate airfields in friendly territory adjacent to the AOR on ships, in an emergency.
- .22___ Coordinates details of the TRAP contingency plan, and ensures its dissemination to subordinate elements.
- .23___ Plans procedures to inform the ACE, MEB ATO, and supported units of updated assault support status.
- .24___ Provides all known assault support missions, and any standby missions, for inclusion into the ATO, and ensures dissemination to all subordinate and supported units.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.8 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS

CONDITION(S): The ACE has been alerted of a political situation that requires the deployment/employment of the MEB. The MEB has arrived at the AAA and marry-up operations are in progress. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed" and rotary-wing aircraft, EW capability, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Coordinates with S-2/3 to gain information on the enemy, terrain, weather, concept of ACE operations, ground scheme of maneuver, intended location of friendly forces, COMSEC requirements etc.
- .2___ Analyzes the mission to identify inherent communications requirements.
- .3___ Participates in MEB/ATF/MPF communication conferences to identify communications requirements and to obtain technical and administrative instructions.
- .4___ Prepares a communications estimate of supportability for each CA considered by the ACE.
- .5___ Ensures message distribution is planned, to include distribution to any units deployed ashore in accordance with procedures in the communications SOP.
- .6___ Coordinates the employment of various types of radios to ensure reliable communications by providing multiple communications paths, and spreads of frequencies across each spectrum.
- .7___ Plans for continuous communications redundancy, and identifies alternate means of communication, (signal flares, lights, panels, flags, et al).
- .8___ Requests any known geographic and/or climatic communications limitations.
- .9___ Coordinates with subordinate elements to ensure required connectivity is planned.
- .10___ Develops a COMSEC plan and coordinates with MEB CEO to monitor COMSEC. Provides friendly taboo and protected frequency requirements.
- .11___ Coordinates the use and allocation of COMSEC equipment and materials based on the commander's guidance.
- .12___ Ensures the communication plan reflects secure voice equipment, correct keys, lists, and edition numbers, and verifies that subordinates possess them.
- .13___ (A) Submits the ACE prioritization and allocation of shipboard communication asset required to the MEB and/or embarked ship's communications officer.

- .14____ Identifies interoperability problems with ATF/MPF, CVBG, and/or theater assets.
- .15____ Determines SATCOM requirements, and requests equipment and channel access via the MEB CEO, if required.
- .16____ Requests frequencies for operations, rehearsal, COMMEX and/or CPX.
- .17____ Coordinates with the MEB/GCE/BSSG for any aerial retransmission requirements.
- .18____ Ensures communications discipline measures are adhered to during planning.
- .19____ Coordinates with the ACE S-3 for communications input to the pilot/controllers handbook.
- .20____ Provides input to the communications annex of the ACE operations order.
- .21____ Plans activation of communications to support command activities during each phase of the operation.
- .22____ Determines liaison requirements to include equipment, personnel, procedures, and communications.
- .23____ Coordinates with the MEB staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support.
- .24____ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, and exchanges information on communications support requirements and assets available.
- .25____ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the planned communication system.
- .26____ Determines and provides for the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .27____ Determines and requests personnel and equipment augmentation (ATF/CMPF/higher command element/host nation/U.S. Embassy), if required.
- .28____ Establishes restoration priorities based on the commander's guidance.
- .29____ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communication plan.
- .30____ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, MHE, POL, berthing, and etc., to the BSSG.
- .31____ (A) Participates in embarkation planning to ensure spread-loading, proper offloading, and access to communications gear while embarked.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.9 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. (A) The GCE of the MEB is ashore as well as elements of the BSSG. (A) The MEB CE and ACE are located ashore. Multichannel radio circuits have been established to allow for ship-to-shore telephone (unsecure) communications. The commander, based on the enemy's EW capability, has stressed the use of wire throughout the MEB.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-80

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates the ability to quickly lay and install wire communications concurrent with the movement of units and the establishment of CP's.
- .2___ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provision for the back-up system.
- .3___ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities.
- .4___ Installs and maintains telephone system according to established priorities.
- .5___ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .6___ Identifies back-up system capable of restoring essential services.
- .7___ Engineers telephoned switching system to provide for alternate routes, and ensures use of alternate routes are understood by users.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Back-up systems can be as rudimentary as laying a hotline between two units. The important factor is that commanders had a redundant system, and could still pass information if the primary means failed.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.10 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The ACE is conducting operations in support of the MEB. The requirement exists to establish communications control at the MEB, ACE, GCE, and BSSG level.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Establishes communication control procedures based on the COMM SOP.
- .2___ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3___ Maintains circuit status.
- .4___ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5___ Provides the necessary communications to allow for continuous command and control.
- .6___ Receives and prepares communications status reports, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.11 EMPLOY ECCM

CONDITION(S): The ACE is conducting operations in support of the MEB. The enemy has an ECM and ESM capability which he has actively employed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Uses terrain masking technique where practical.
- .2___ Uses only authorized codes.
- .3___ All radio and telecommunications means are secured with encryption devices the maximum extent possible, utilizes authorized op codes/manual encryption on any unsecured circuit.
- .4___ Radio operations continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness and send messages by alternate means, if available.
- .5___ Radios are remoted from the CP/agency to the maximum extent practical.
- .6___ Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
- .7___ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedure.
- .8___ Adheres to EMCON conditions.
- .9___ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10___ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope of practicable.
- .11___ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12___ Used daily changing frequencies and call signs on all tactical nets whenever frequency allocations find call sign assignments allow.
- .13___ Reports MIJI per formats and procedures designated.
- .14___ Uses lowest power necessary on radios to provide communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.12 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICHANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The ACE is conducting tactical operations in support of the MEB.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2___ Selects and correctly employs proper antennas.
- .3___ Follows correct safety techniques.
- .4___ Follows proper grounding procedures.
- .5___ Follows lost communications procedures.
- .6___ Employs radio retransmission capability as required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-82

- .7___ Employs effective equipment power source management.
- .8___ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .9___ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment employment.
- .10___ Uses equipment record jackets and appropriate TM's.
- .11___ Performs PM's per the applicable TM's.
- .12___ Employs proper ENCOM techniques.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.13 PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES

CONDITION(S): Elements of the ACE are engaged in operations in support of the MEB. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the MEB CE, the GCE, and the ACE. Communications centers and switching stations have been established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Compiles and utilizes communication access lists.
- .2___ Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
- .3___ Adheres to current CMS material directives.
- .4___ Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communication spaces are in place.
- .5___ Possesses an EAP appropriate to the threat intelligence.
- .6___ Personnel are knowledgeable of EAP destruction procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.14 EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX, ETC.)

CONDITION(S): Elements of the ACE are engaged in operations in support of the MEB. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the MEB CE, the GCE, and the ACE. Terminal equipment is being used to pass essential information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Connectivity between all planned terminal equipment exists.
- .2___ Correctly configures terminal and COMSEC equipment.
- .3___ Follows correct operator procedures.

- .4____ Follows proper grounding techniques.
- .5____ Meets environmental consideration.
- .6____ Establishes restoration procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.15 PLAN SECURITY

CONDITION(S): Activities at the AAA are complete and the ACE has been tasked to support MEB operations. There is a potential rear area security threat from aircraft, helicopterborne/airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a night vision and multidiscipline.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
- .2____ Ensures unit commanders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all operations.
- .3____ Evaluates whether the ROE provide sufficient flexibility for the MEB to defend itself against likely threats. Initiates immediate request for ROE modification when necessary.
- .4____ Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, the use of barriers, and obstacles.
- .5____ Uses field expedient protective measures against enemy lasers; i.e., concealment, observation techniques, smoke, protective cover, limiting the number of Marines observing, use of NVG's thermal night sights.
- .6____ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and on-call.
- .8____ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and passive and active air defense coverage.
- .9____ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for all forces.
- .10____ Ensures that rear area security plans place minimum reliance on units from the maneuver element or GCE.
- .11____ Divides the rear area into several smaller areas of responsibility, when appropriate. Division of rear area includes proper attention to point defense and LOC security requirements.
- .12____ Ensures that each subordinate unit understands its responsibility for local security.
- .13____ Ensures that the rear area security effort is proportional to the threat.
- .14____ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, OP's, LP's, and other local security techniques.
- .15____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
- .16____ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures for their notification and transportation.
- .17____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.

- .18___ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units; e.g., TRAP, mass casualties, etc.
- .19___ Plans active counterintelligence measures designed to neutralize the hostile multidiscipline intelligence collection effort and efforts toward sabotage, subversion and terrorism.
- .20___ Develops passive counterintelligence measures designed to conceal and deny information to the enemy, protect personnel from subversion and terrorism, and protects installations and material against sabotage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.16 CONDUCT AERIAL RECONNAISSANCE

CONDITION(S): MEB objectives have been identified. MEB aerial reconnaissance assets include RPV's, photography, and aerial sensors. Timely reconnaissance is required for both initial mission planning and follow-up damage assessments.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Establishes early liaison with the S-2 to provide advice concerning the tactical air reconnaissance collection effort for the landing force.
- .2___ Coordinates with the MEB for the aerial reconnaissance and observation plan.
- .3___ Reviews ACE SOP for the collection procedures and timely dissemination of aviation acquired combat information to all required elements.
- .4___ Recommends the request for employment of additional theater national assets, if required to support operations.
- .5___ Assists the MEB G-2 in planning for aerial emplaced sensors (Aerial Delivered Seismic Intrusion Detectors [ADSID]), from both HI and LOW performance aircraft.
- .6___ Coordinates with the MEB G-2 for the integration of all available sensor systems under a single coordinated control system.
- .7___ Recommends aerial reconnaissance assets be used in various multi-mission roles, i.e., adjustment of fires, BDA reports, LZ studies, route reconnaissance, NAVAID to friendly forces, rear area security, and hand-held photography.
- .8___ Plans measures to support any organic reconnaissance mission, i.e., deception, airstrikes, ECM, escort, and/or in-flight refueling.
- .9___ Plans for surprise, speed, and the avoidance of offensive combat action in order to protect the recon aircraft, and ensures the delivery of required information.
- .10___ Advises the MEB on the type of airborne electronic reconnaissance support for the ground scheme of maneuver that is available from external sources, thereby, providing up-to-date EOB information.
- .11___ Coordinates with the GCE to develop an observation and surveillance plan for the objective area(s) to include tactical air observers, artillery, and naval spotters.
- .12___ Arranges for any special equipment (NVG, starlite scopes) required for visual observation at night and during periods of low visibility.
- .13___ Ensures all pilots are briefed on responsibilities for visual reconnaissance and immediate debrief for all flights.

MCO 3501.8A
19 JUN 91

.14___ Requests immediate aerial imagery of the objective area and any
special topographic products available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-86

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.17 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE AIR SUPPORT (OAS)

CONDITION(S):

1. A daily conference is held to coordinate and schedule all MEB air support requirements for the next 24 hours. Elements of the MEB are determining their requirements for future operations, and will submit preplanned requests prior the conference. When feasible, the conference will be attended by representatives from the subordinate elements of the MEB and a representative from the embarked TACRON.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Calculates daily sorties available for OAS (CAS and air interdiction), and provides this information to the MEB.
- .2____ Develops planning figures for a surge effort, identifying how long the surge effort can be sustained, how many days will be required to recover, and the sorties available during recovery.
- .3____ Coordinates with GCE air officer to determine their initial estimate of DAS (CAS and air interdiction) requirements.
- .4____ Assists the GCE and MEB in the evaluation of DAS and interdiction targets.
- .5____ Coordinates with the GCE to determine CAS allocation priorities for pre-planned and immediate missions, and submits recommendations to the MEB.
- .6____ Submits the agreed to a prioritized list of all OAS requirements to the MEB for approval.
- .7____ Receives MEB commander's apportionment guidance for OAS and, based on the priorities assigned, begins developing detailing planning.
- .8____ Recommends request for additional OAS support from CVBG or land based assets, if requirements indicate inadequate MEB aviation assets.
- .9____ Identifies significant OAS limitations and problem areas to the MEB.
- .10____ Coordinates requirements for airframe configuration required to support special missions (i.e., laser guided weapons, conventional weapons, missiles, et al).
- .11____ Recommends proposals for modifying the OAS plan if no additional assets are available.
- .12____ Coordinates with group/ATF/MPF ordnance personnel to ensure appropriate weapons are available and consistent with type forgoes assigned.
- .13____ Provides terrain masking and threat avoidance information, based on a detailed terrain analysis and available intelligence, to the OAS aircrews for their detailed planning.
- .14____ Ensures procedures are established for safety of flight and deconfliction with other supporting arms (NGF artillery, mortars, and helicopter routes).
- .15____ Coordinates with the GCE to ensure ground based terminal controllers are knowledgeable and trained in current procedures and forms.
- .16____ Ensures the SOP establishes the method for supported units to request additional immediate air support, and disseminates those procedures by recommended input to the MEB operations order.
- .17____ (A) Coordinates the integration of OAS control points (rendezvous points, contact points, initial points) with the ATF control agencies (HDC, TACC, SACC), and disseminates the information to subordinate elements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .18____ (A) Coordinates shipboard troop loading and refueling/rearming cycles with the ATF.
- .19____ Plan procedures to inform the ACE, MEB AO, and support units of updated air support status.
- .20____ Provides, all known air support missions, and any standby missions, for inclusion into the ATO, and ensures dissemination to subordinate and supported units.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.18 CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE

CONDITION(S): A CVBG, and/or land-based aircraft, will provide the majority of aviation assets for the requirements as delineated by the CATF/CLF/CINC. Radio Battalion has provided a DSU to the supported MEB or planning and operations. The ACE task organic assets, and coordinates outside aviation EW requirements with the ATF/MPF, based on the priorities set by the MEB commander.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Receives MEB commander's initial planning guidance.
- .2____ Prepares an estimate of supportability.
- .3____ Coordinates with the S/EWCC to establish a single point of control to coordinate EW within the ACA.
- .4____ Coordinates with MEB G-2/DSU, on how aviation assets can assist in the MEB EW effort (i.e., placement of monitor teams, airborne relay, etc.)
- .5____ Ensures EW SOP's are followed and proper procedures are included in the MEB operations order, to include any reports required (MIJI, et al).
- .6____ Develops signal security plans to include all phases of communication security; i.e., cryptosecurity, transmission security, emission security, and physical security, and disseminates appropriate procedures to subordinate elements.
- .7____ Develops inputs to the necessary appendixes for the concept of airborne EW (airborne and/or ground-based) for the CATF/CLF/CINC. (K)
- .8____ Determines and requests EW support augmentation for direct support of specific aviation missions assigned.
- .9____ Requests aircraft for airborne electronic surveillance with real time reporting over secure tactical communications nets, when required.
- .10____ Ensures all mission plans include both active and passive EW (any aircraft can be used as an airborne listening platform).
- .11____ Conducts OPSEC/COHSEC monitoring and reporting as directed by the MEB.
- .12____ Ensures that all planners, operators, and users of electronic equipment thoroughly understand the EW threat.
- .13____ Ensures aviation self-defense ECM/ECCM capabilities are installed and are operable; i.e., Radar Homing and Warning (RHAW) gear, Defensive Electronic Counter Measures (DECH) equipment, chaff, and flares, on all aircraft.
- .14____ Coordinates with the MEB for a viable ECCM plan (to include EHCON) which accounts for varying enemy threat capabilities.

Enclosure (1)

- .15____ Develops procedures to ensure ERIH's and ERIR's generated from the CVBG or land-based assets are requested through the MEB G-2.
- .16____ Plans procedures for the emergency extraction of monitoring or radio relay teams, if required.
- .17____ Ensures inclusion of EW plans when conducting rehearsals.
- .18____ Submits EW reports per the established SOP's and/or operations orders in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ELECTRONIC WARFARE

EW is the use of electromagnetic energy to determine, exploit, reduce, or prevent hostile use of the electromagnetic spectrum and those actions which retain friendly use of the electromagnetic spectrum. Three categories are included:

1. Electronic Warfare Support Measures (ESM). That division of EW involving actions taken under the direct control of an operational commander to search for, intercept, and identify/locate sources of radiated electromagnetic energy for the purpose of immediate threat recognition.
2. Electronic Countermeasures (ECM). Those actions taken to prevent or reduce and enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum.
 - a. Electronic Jamming. Deliberate radiation, re-radiation, or reflection of electronic energy with the object of impairing the use of electronic devices, equipment, or systems used by the enemy.
 - b. Electronic Deception. Deliberate radiation, alteration, absorption, or reflection of electromagnetic energy in a manner intended to be received by the enemy electronic systems. Both manipulative and imitative deceptions are included.
3. Electronic Counter Countermeasures (ECCM). That division of EW involving actions taken to retain effective friendly use of the electromagnetic spectrum.

TASK: 7B.3.19 CONDUCT ACE BRIEFING

CONDITION(S): The MEB commander has published the ATO for the first day of employment operations. All liaison has been performed by the ACE, and mission planning is complete. The ACE holds an aviation brief prior to each day's activities to ensure coordination of effort.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Briefs detailed ground scheme of maneuver, forces and weapons involved, control points, LZ's/alternate LZ's, ingress/egress routes, and escorts.
- .2____ Clearly states mission priorities.
- .3____ Briefs fire support integration plan; assets available, and control measures.
- .4____ Coordinates intelligence briefing of latest threat information available.
- .5____ Briefs current ROE/alert conditions and/or weapons conditions information.
- .6____ Provides EEL's for visual reconnaissance.
- .7____ Briefs SOP for authority to change routes, LZ's, and/or targets.
- .8____ Brief SOP for downed aircraft over land or sea, to include escape and evasion considerations.

- .9____ Briefs timeline.
- .10____ Briefs COMM plan to include No Radio (NORDO) procedures, code words, frequencies, EMCON/ECCM procedures, aircraft, and ground signals, etc.
- .11____ Briefs deception plan, if required.
- .12____ Specifically briefs the command information required by the ACE during operations, arm the communication methods for transmission of that information.
- .13____ Briefs any changes to ATF control procedures or the ATF contact frequencies.
- .14____ Briefs any changes to control points, hangover points, and RTF procedures.
- .15____ Briefs FARP requirements, locations, and control procedures, if required.
- .16____ Briefs AV-8 forward sites, security requirements, and control procedures, if required.
- .17____ Briefs the ATF on the requirements for AV-8's to return to their ship for rearming, refueling, and maintenance requirements.
- .18____ Briefs friendly locations of air defense assets (LAAD) ashore, and any changing MEZ requirements.
- .19____ Briefs any changes to TACP control procedures or communications requirements.
- .20____ Briefs any changes to the pilot/control tar handbook.
- .21____ Briefs availability of oncall EW, smoke obscuring, or illumination missions.
- .22____ Briefs availability of additional theater aviation assets for AAW, OAS, or C3 augmentation requirements.
- .23____ Affords participants the opportunity to ask questions in order to ensure a thorough understanding.
- .24____ Establishes the time and place of debriefing.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY DICTATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.20 CONTROL ACE OPERATIONS/EXECUTION

CONDITION(S): The ACE and his staff continuously monitor current operations and take appropriate actions, necessary. Representing the ACE, assigned staff members coordinate with elements of the MEB and (A) appropriate ATF control agencies to ensure integration of efforts, and continuity of aviation support to the MEB.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prebriefs daily operations with ATF control agencies and staff members to ensure a concern understanding of objectives.
- .2____ Supervises the conduct of the operation from a position immediately accessible to the MEB commander and alters plans if required, by the charges in the scheme of Maneuver or the enemy situation.
- .3____ Disseminates any changes of procedures or communications to subordinates as dictated by the operational situation.
- .4____ Supervises and consciously monitors the conduct of air operations in support of the MEB and recommends to the MEB commander modification to the air plan in response to the changes in the scheme of maneuver of the enemy situation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-90

- .5___ Monitors any delays to preplanned missions, and/or mission aborts, and provides recommendations for alternative actions to the MEB/ supported unit.
- .6___ Revalidates and reprioritizes the GCE air interdiction and CAS targets as changes to the scheme of maneuver occur.
- .7___ Coordinates continuous updating of OAS target lists with the GCE.
- .8___ Provides liaison personnel to joint/combined control agencies with access to the communications networks required to ensure aviation support to the deployed landing force by monitoring mission progress.
- .9___ Monitors Tactical Air Request (TARI/Helicopter Request (HR) nets for completeness, and advises ATF/MPF control agencies to ensure appropriate support is assigned.
- .10___ Coordinates with G-2 to ensure all signal intelligence and EW assets of the ACE are fully employed, and information is continuously disseminated to the subordinate elements.
- .11___ Ensures procedures are established to continuously update existing all source intelligence as intelligence becomes available from both organic and nonorganic sources and that this intelligence is passed to the subordinate elements.
- .12___ Ensures contingency requirements and emergencies are handled according to plans, and SOP procedures are tactically sound.
- .13___ Ensures early warning information and alert conditions are passed in a timely manner to deployed LAAD teams.
- .14___ Ensures timeline is adhered to.
- .15___ Launches preplanned reaction forces, if required by the tactical situation (HEDEVAC, TRAP force, mechanics, combat reinforcements, etc.).
- .16___ Recommends CVBG or theater augmentation for all aviation functions, if required by the tactical situation.
- .17___ Selects multiple AV-8 forward sites that remain far enough removed from hostile action to preclude large security requirements.
- .18___ Maintains status of all MEB aviation assets for the possibility of immediate mission assignments/changes.
- .19___ (A) Prepares to establish air support coordination ashore with the GCE/FSCC, if required by the scheme of maneuver.
- .20___ Ensures LZ control officer and HST/ATC personnel are available for shore based control, if required.
- .21___ Conducts a post operation evaluation to discuss lessons learned, and uses positive points to update contingency plans and SOP's.
- .22___ Evaluation negative points are resolved and changes are made to contingency plans and SOP's, if applicable.
- .23___ Continues planning for future operations.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.3.21 CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The ACE is conducting tactical operations. The enemy is known to possess nuclear and chemical warfare capabilities and have demonstrated their intention to employ NBC attacks in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ ACE possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC attacks and reports required.
- .2____ Establishes back-up command, control, and communications procedures to be used under NBC conditions.
- .3____ Receives NBC reports from subordinate elements or higher command elements when NBC attack is considered probable.
- .4____ Alerts all subordinate elements and provides guidance.
- .5____ Provides direction to subordinates concerning MOPP, detection, monitor or survey operations, and contamination avoidance.
- .6____ Continues to receive reports from subordinate elements.
- .7____ Provides updates to subordinates as they become available.
- .8____ Provides assistance to subordinates in hasty or deliberate decontamination beyond their capabilities.
- .9____ Advises Commander/S-3 on the effects of an NBC environment on the unit's ability to carry out particular aspects of its mission.
- .10____ Calculates radioactive decay, total dose transmission of actors, and optimum time of exit from radioactive contaminated area.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

7B.4 COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT ELEMENT (CSSE)

TASK: 7B.4.1 CONDUCT CONTINGENCY AND OPERATIONAL STAFF PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The MEB is currently awaiting the receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed staff planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ (G,M) Reviews MEB contingency airlift plans for notional task organization(s).
- .2____ (G,M) Reviews MEB data on prospective AAA to include, port, beach, airfield, airfield facilities roads, local communications, water, power storage area, and prospective host nation information.
- .3____ (G,M) Based upon MEB plans, develops generic operational plans to support the MEB's timely offload, and issuance of maritime prepositioned equipment and supplies.
- .4____ (G,H) Provides requested input to the MEB on time phasing, MPF/GPF FIE, and AFOE.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-92

- .5____ Reviews existing plans, SOP's, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .6____ Analyzes the mission and available information to identify inherent CSS requirements.
- .7____ Reviews the MEB G-2's intelligence estimate to gather all available intelligence on the enemy, and information on the area as well as climate, weather, terrain, existing facilities, local transportation, condition of airfields, hospitals, distances both inside and outside the objective area, etc. (See Task: 7B.4.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT.)
- .8____ Reviews and analyzes command relationships.
- .9____ Develops, in coordination with the MEB command element, a detailed logistics estimate of supportability which compares all CSS-related factors influencing each proposed tactical CA (i.e., logistics requirements, availability of means, and identified shortfalls).
- .10____ Coordinates with MEB G-4 proposed CSS CA's based on the MEB commander's planning guidance, proposed operational CA's the area of operations and availability, and for sources of supply.
- .11____ Conducts concurrent and parallel planning with CE, ACE, and GCE planners throughout the MEB's estimation and planning process.
- .12____ Uses the CSS estimate of supportability to analyze the proposed CA's for the GCE, and determines which CA is most desirable from a CSS standpoint.
- .13____ Computes detailed logistics requirements for each stage of the operation, based on types of support and quantities required, and coordinates priority of support with the MEB commander/G-4.
- .14____ Identifies in coordination with the command element and ATF/HPF agencies, local or inter service sources of CSS, particularly facilities, supplies and transportation.
- .15____ Determines the location of supplies and their availability.
- .16____ Establishes procedures to allow for the requesting of required assets.
- .17____ Conducts a survey of the available areas and facilities to identify provisions for reception, offload, clearance, and storage of supplies and equipment; access to routes for distribution and evacuation; and coordinates the planned use of these areas and facilities with the CE/GCE/ACE.
- .18____ Task organizes the BSSG based on tasks, available resources, estimated workload, and provisions for command and control.
- .19____ Coordinates, in conjunction with the CE, the types and quantities of supplies to be carried by MEB subordinate elements units as well as the types and quantities required for (A) floating dumps, prestaged helicopter lifted supplies, and (A,M) selective unloading.
- .20____ Determines logistical shortfalls, problem areas, and CSS limitations, and forwards them to the CE with the recommendations to alleviate these problems.
- .21____ Provides input for paragraph 4 (Admin/Logistics) and annex D of the MEB operations plan/order, as required.
- .22____ Establishes continuing coordination with ATF/MPF planners involved with CSS operations as well as GCE and ACE logistics planners.
- .23____ Ensures published CSS policies and procedures are in consonance with those contained in the MEB and BSSG SOP.
- .24____ Determines, in coordination with the BSSG, medical requirements for the evacuation of casualties, medical anti dental supports, medical supply, establishment ashore of primary treatment, and temporary hospitalization. (See Task: 7B.4.12 PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES.)
- .25____ (A) Reviews embarkation data and considers any crossdecking requirements.
- .26____ Computes, in coordination with the CE, civil affairs support requirements, and compares these needs with available in country resources in order to determine shortfalls. (See Task: 7B.4.20 PLAN CIVIL AFFAIRS.)

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .27____ Identifies, in coordination with the CE, requirements for base development, rehabilitation, or other construction requirements.
- .28____ Provides input for the MEB operations plan/order, as required.
- .29____ Reviews requirements for mobile service support detachments.
- .30____ Ensures CSS concept provides for CSS support to be provided as geographically far forward as possible to minimize delivery delays.
- .31____ (A) Provides representation, in coordination with the MEB G-3/4 and GCE, to the TACLOG for the ship-to-shore movement.
- .32____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate BSSG elements to include warning, reporting, detection, decontamination, exposure guidance, MOPP, casualty handling, and resupply of NBC equipment based on guidance from the CE.
- .33____ Coordinates with the G-1, G-2, and G-4 to plan for the early intelligence exploitation, administration, and protection of POW's and detainees.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The estimates can be either written or verbal, depending on the situation and time available.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.2 DIRECT INTELLIGENCE EFFORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The MEB is currently awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat Aces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Prepares a preliminary intelligence estimate upon receipt of the initiating directive.
- .2____ Prepares a detailed intelligence estimate upon receipt of the commander's guidance.
- .3____ Recommends EEI(s)/OIR(s) based on input from the staff, the assigned mission and guidance from the commander, and determines CSS intelligence and basic requirements.
- .4____ Identifies communication circuit requirements to CEO.
- .5____ Coordinates, with other members of the BSSG, to develop logistics intelligence requirements; i.e., availability of local resources, sources of supply, available facilities, road networks, and effects of weather, etc.
- .6____ Coordinates with the MEB G-2 for a dynamic collection plan that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation, and reflects the status of the collection effort.
- .7____ Utilizes a collection worksheet to monitor the collection effort.
- .8____ Submits a prioritized list of EEI's and OIR's to the MEB G-2, or through them to higher, adjacent, and supporting comments.
- .9____ Makes early distribution of the intelligence estimate to allow other staff officers to prepare their estimates.
- .10____ Determines BSSG requirements for maps, charts, photographs, and other graphic aids.

- .11____ Coordinates with the MEB counterintelligence officer to provide CI analysis of the operating area.
- .12____ Verifies the list of civilian population centers, and places protected by the law of war.
- .13____ Identifies reporting instructions; i.e., time constraints and to whom to report.
- .14____ Considers all organic collection assets available to the MEB to support the collection effort when requesting support.
- .15____ Records information systematically for ease of study and comparison.
- .16____ Evaluates information as to pertinence, reliability of source, and accuracy.
- .17____ Integrates the collected information with nonorganic source material to form a logical picture or hypothesis of enemy activities and capabilities.
- .18____ Determines requirements for dissemination; i.e., timeliness, usability of form, pertinence, and security.
- .19____ Prepares an intelligence annex to the BSSG operations order that refines the manner in which intelligence operations will be conducted.
- .20____ Ensures the intelligence annex amplifies the procedures contained in the MEB SOP for intelligence.
- .21____ Submits timely and pertinent intelligence reports to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.
- .22____ Submits all required intelligence reports of a periodic nature to higher and adjacent headquarters in a timely manner.
- 23____ Processes and disseminate intelligence information as listed for ACE in Task 7B.3.3.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.3 DEVELOP CONCEPT OF COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The MEB is currently awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. A CVBG is also en route. The threat forces have direct and indirect fire, both fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft, EW, and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Conducts mission analysis and identifies implied communications requirements.
- .2____ Requests available intelligence and combat information which is applicable to communications planning; e.g., enemy EW capabilities, terrain, and weather.
- .3____ Reviews task organization and command relationships for communications needlines for the BSSG.
- .4____ Reviews communications SOP, contingency plans, and lessons learned for applicability.
- .5____ Validates internal and external needlines for current and future operations.
- .6____ Identifies types of information to be exchanged; i.e., data, voice, facsimile, etc.
- .7____ Evaluates adequacy of communication system to support expected message traffic volume.
- .8____ Prepares a communication estimate of supportability based on proposed BSSG CA's.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9____ Refines concept of communications support based on the commander's guidance.
- .10____ Reviews overall communication readiness.
- .11____ Prepares and publishes a communication plan that provides for reliability, speed, flexibility, and security as well as communications for contingency plans.
- .12____ Employs circuit profile analysis techniques.
- .13____ Submits recommended prioritization of communications equipment, frequencies, and COMSEC materials.
- .14____ Demonstrates knowledge of all communications available (i.e., AUTODIN, AUTOVON, AUTOSEVOCON) while en route to the objective area.
- .15____ Provides input to the MEB CEOI's based on the logistic concept of operations and procedures contained in the COMM SOP.
- .16____ Plans activation of communications to support command activities during each phase of the operation.
- .17____ Determines liaison requirements to include equipment, personnel, procedures and communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.4 CONDUCT STAFF COMMUNICATIONS COORDINATION

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment employment, and the CEO has begun detailed communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Coordinates with internal staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, and make recommendations on communications support.
- .2____ Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, make recommendations on communications support, acquire status of on-hand equipment, etc.
- .3____ Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the identified needlines.
- .4____ Determines and allocates the internal redistribution of assets, if required.
- .5____ Coordinates with higher/adjacent command elements to receive and identify liaison requirements, doctrinal and unique requirements, exchange information, and make recommendations.
- .6____ Coordinates with MEB CEO any unique communication requirements needing external support.
- .7____ Submits frequency requests based on the use of frequency propagation analysis tools "previous experience, ECAC, Advanced Prophet, CAC, etc.).
- .8____ Provides input and staff coordination in the development of the MEB EW plan and C3CM plan.
- .9____ Ensures that the plan for communications/electronics maintenance supports the communications plan.
- .10____ Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, MHE, POL, etc., to support communications.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-96

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.5 PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY

CONDITION(S): The embarked MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and is actively involved during the initial stages of communications planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes transmission security requirements based on command relationships and MEB guidance.
- .2____ Establishes emissions security requirements based on MEB guidance.
- .3____ Determines cryptological security requirements based on MEB guidance.
- .4____ Establishes physical security requirements.
- .5____ Ensures ICP for joint operations is held and meets mission requirements.
- .6____ Coordinates use/allocation of COMSEC equipment including control, acquisition, handling, storage and distribution, as well as ensuring that keying materials and required OMB equipment are possessed.
- .7____ Plans for adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces.
- .8____ Develops an EAP.
- .9____ Ensures requisite CMS material is onhand, and coordinates with MEB CEO/OMS the acquisition of any shortfalls.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.6 PLAN FOR SUPPLY

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted and has begun detailed supply planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Develops supply plans based on procedures contained in the BSSG SOP.
- .2____ (A) Identifies the location of supplies and ammunition aboard amphibious shipping.
- .3____ (A) Identifies any crossdecking requirements of supplies, ammunition, and equipment to support the MEB concept of operations.
- .4____ Identifies the requirement to establish supply storage locations, and the operating levels of supplies by class to be maintained.
- .5____ Coordinates with the SNCOIC of the utilities section to identify any requirement to establish a fuel dispensing system. (See Task: 7B.4.11 PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS.)

- .6_____ Plans procedures for follow-on resupply requests to the appropriate supply source(s).
- .7_____ Coordinates with the ATF/MPF staff concerning the shipboard issuance of supplies, ammunition, and equipment.
- .8_____ Coordinates with BSSG staff concerning proposed location of depots, and ensures planned storage per the SOP and appropriate TM's.
- .9_____ Ensures medical supplies requiring separate storage and distribution are considered.
- .10_____ Proposes control measures for the issuance of critical ammunition items.
- .11_____ Requests transportation support for the movement of supplies.
- .12_____ Identifies any special environmental and physical protection requirements for all classes of supplies.
- .13_____ Requests the revetting/protection of ammunition and fuel dumps.
- .14_____ Coordinates resupply procedures with the supported units and the BSSG S-3 to include force feeding supplies to units, when required.
- .15_____ Develops salvage policy and procedures in coordination with other BSSG staff members.
- .16_____ Develops a reports control system that stresses only the limited information that is absolutely essential.
- .17_____ Determines supply related MHE requirements.
- .18_____ Provides supply input for inclusion in the BSSG operations order/plan.
- .19_____ Coordinates with the supported unit's S-4 to identify anticipated equipment densities in order to determine an accurate supply block.
- .20_____ Identifies supply requirements to ensure the ready availability of repair parts, and coordinates how these supplies (to include parts) are to be packaged and moved, e.g., boxes, vans, etc.
- .21_____ Integrates planning for receipt handling, storage, and movement of containerized supplies into overall supply plans.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.7 PLAN MAINTENANCE SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that potentially requires its deployment/employment. The MEB is awaiting receipt of the initiating directive. The BSSG has been alerted and has begun detailed maintenance planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Coordinates with the supported unit's S-4 via the BSSG to identify accurate maintenance support requirements.
- .2_____ Develops a maintenance concept that provides for the direct exchange of modules, components, and assemblies (secondary repairables); and allows for work to be performed as geographically far forward as possible to reduce delay time.
- .3_____ Determines the locations of facilities, and the requirements for shelters, physical security, specialized skills and tools, sources of power and lighting, hardstand, camouflage and dispersion, and trafficability into and out of the facility.

- .4____ Recommends a "time to repair" criteria to the BSSG in the development of evacuation procedures.
- .5____ Coordinates the availability of work end shop spaces aboard ATF/MPF ships.
- .6____ Develops concept for maintenance contact teams, to include provisions for team organization, transportation, tools and equipment, component parts, security, navigation, food, and water.
- .7____ Develops an overflow maintenance plan for assisting the maintenance effort of the supported units.
- .8____ Provides input to the salvage concept of the BSSG operations order.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.8 PLAN MOTOR TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has alerted, and has begun detailed motor transport planning.

STANDARD: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Motor transport officer (MTO) participates in all phases of planning.
- .2____ Establishes procedures for the centralized control of MT assets ashore based on provisions in the SOP to include establishing priorities and allocating critical resources.
- .3____ Provides staff input during the development of the logistics and CSS estimates of supportability.
- .4____ Coordinates the traffic circulation plan with the BSSG command element to ensure timely and responsive movement.
- .5____ Determines overall MT support requirements, and ensures effective use is made of the transport capability of the vehicles consistent with tactical considerations and fully considers any accommodations for special requirements, such as a container transport.
- .6____ Determines maintenance assets required to service and repair the MEB vehicle fleet.
- .7____ Ensures that security for MT assets is planned to include cover and camouflage when vehicles are not in use.
- .8____ Coordinates motor transport assistance for landing assets ashore.
- .9____ Establishes a schedule for vehicle preparation and inspection prior to moving ashore.
- .10____ Schedules surf driving technique review classes for all drivers.
- .11____ Requests intelligence/information to determine beach trafficability, soil characteristics, weight bearing properties, beach gradients, and the location of sand bars, etc.
- .12____ (A) Determines the number and types of vehicles, if any, to land with the assault echelon.
- .13____ Determines the requirement to transport bulk liquid (fuel and water).
- .14____ Coordinates communications requirements to ensure sufficient equipment, frequencies, and call signs are available.
- .15____ Establishes a reports control system based on the SOP that stresses only the absolutely required information.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.9 PLAN LANDING SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed landing support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Identifies beaches and HLZ's to be supported based on the MEB planning guidance.
- .2____ Requests information on the analysis of beach and inland terrain conditions to include HLZ's and drop zones, local resources, climate, routes of communications, and installations.
- .3____ (A,M) Computes the cargo and vehicular discharge through put rates of the beach, port, or other facilities to be used during the offload.
- .4____ Identifies the quantity and types of supplies to be landed, and the types of containers to be used during movement.
- .5____ Determines the availability of landing force support personnel, supplies, and equipment.
- .6____ Analyzes the overall requirements for landing support assistance, and identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements to include Navy augmentation.
- .7____ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .8____ (A) Plans the phasing ashore of landing force shore party (LFSP) assets to establish facilities based on the commander's concept of operations and the concept for logistics support.
 1. Develops LFSP plan which contains instructions for control, organization of the BSA, LZA's, and CSSA, use of floating dumps, and priorities for landing LSB equipment.
- .9____ Task organizes LFSP personnel and equipment to support planned water-borne and/or helicopterborne assaults.
- .10____ Identifies depot sites, in coordination with other CSS planners.
- .11____ (A) Establishes initial priority of preparing and monitoring beaching points and access roads.
- .12____ Identifies the initial locations of where various categories of supplies are to be landed/staged, and where casualties are to be evacuated.
- .13____ Coordinates plans for initial supplies and equipment to be vehicle loaded, palletized, and/or in packaged lifts to permit the rapid movement inland to using units or separated inland depots, and reduce congestion at the water's edge.
- .14____ (A) Plans for the landing of LSFP reconnaissance teams early in the scheduled eaves to verify tentatively selected sites for various beach installations, and serve as guides.
- .15____ Coordinates casualty evacuation and disaster recovery plans. (See Task: 7B.4.12 PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES.)
- .16____ (A) Coordinates liaison procedures to be used with the TACLOG.
- .17____ Determines cargo handling requirements, both personnel and equipment, to ensure MHE capable of lifting and moving supplies rapidly are available and to identify and plan support for container handling requirements.
- .18____ Coordinates the provisions for the physical security of BSA's, LZSA's, and/or CSSA's.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-100

- .19___ Coordinates MP support to include traffic control, intelligence exploitation, and handling of POW's, detainees, and military dogs. (See Task: 7B.4.15 PLAN MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT)
- .20___ Identifies any special requirements for additional personnel augmentation and/or equipment support.
- .21___ (A) Schedules specialized cargo handling training for personnel of the ship's platoon.
- .22___ (A) Identifies procedures to be used to record and report which element's supplies and equipment are landed.
- .23___ Coordinates the location of depot sites which provide for dispersion, cover and concealment, and availability of existing routes of communications.
- .24___ Identifies the requirements and procedures for beach and HLZ marking designations, cleared access lines, and NAVAID equipment (both visual and electronic) based on the SOP.
- .25___ (A) Coordinates traffic control both within the beach support area and HLZ's to facilitate traffic circulation.
- .26___ (A) Determines the requirement for installing beach matting.
- .27___ Plans ammunition storage considering storage groups compatibility and requirement, safe separations, and safe distances from the fuel unloading point and other stores.
- .28___ Establishes procedures for the handling of supplies within each dump, ensuring supplies are segregated by type and other distinguishing characteristics to ensure rapid inventory and issue.
- .29___ Establishes procedures for unloading and handling of ammunition in accordance with the procedures contained in the SOP.
- .30___ Designates cargo handling procedures which reduce the manpower requirements and make maximum use of mechanical equipment.
- .31___ (A) Coordinates with operational planners to ensure adequate engineer equipment and personnel are included in scheduled waves to establish beach egress routes.
- .32___ (A) Coordinates the early landing of LFSP personnel and equipment to ensure the availability to unload, segregate, store, safeguard, and issues supplies as they are brought ashore.
- .33___ Coordinates the establishment of evacuation stations.
- .34___ Coordinates the establishment of POW and straggler collection points.
- .35___ Plans for the provision of fire fighting and floodlight equipment.
- .36___ Determines the requirements for HST support and requirements for cargo nets, slings, and other HST equipment at the various HLZ's.
- .37___ Ensures provisions are made for conducting night operations.
- .38___ (A) Coordinates provisions for the reduction of mines and other obstacles on the beach.
- .39___ Prepares heliteams.
- .40___ Ensures prepackaged supplies are kept within the weight limitations of the cargo handling equipment available at the landing site.
- .41___ Determines techniques of aerial supply delivery; i.e., helicopter, parachute, or free dropped.
- .42___ Identifies the communications requirements as flowlines based on the needs between elements of the LFSP, assault units, control elements, and other supporting agencies as well as lateral communications between beaches and HLZ's.
- .43___ Establishes procedures for submitting reports and establishment of records and overlays per the SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .44____ (A) Ensures the LFSP task organization allows for the immediate establishment of communications ashore.
- .45____ (A) Determines the requirement for offshore transfer operations.
- .46____ Prepares and suits a landing support party plan for inclusion in the CSS annex of the operations order.
- .47____ Participates in contingency planning.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.10 PLAN DELIBERATE ENGINEER SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed engineer support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Develops plans based on procedures contained in the BSSG SOP.
- .2____ Identifies engineer support requirements based on the assigned mission to include engineer reconnaissance, deliberate construction of field fortifications and protective structures, storage and maintenance of facilities, and utilities; construction, repair, and maintenance of VTOL site arm HLZ's; construction, equipment support, and technical assistance in developing CSS facilities to include beach preparation; development of routes of communications; deliberate demolitions and obstacle removal to include explosive and nonexplosive obstacles.
- .3____ Provides input to the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .4____ Determines intelligence and combat information requirements based on the area of operations, enemy, terrain, and weather.
- .5____ Requests special topographical products on the area of operations.
- .6____ Submits recommendations on the employment of engineers.
- .7____ Coordinates the development of engineer tasking based on the commander's guidance and assigned priorities.
- .8____ (A) Identifies any crossdecking requirements.
- .9____ Issues a earning order to subordinates and begins detailed planning.
- .10____ Requests information on the availability of local resources, sources, and procedures to acquire needed materials and equipment.
- .11____ Locates bridges in the area of operations, and attempts to determine their classification from available information, identify fords, and/or coordinates a reconnaissance effort to determine the information.
- .12____ Calculates the type and amount of classes IV and V required to support the engineer efforts.
- .13____ Prepares sketches or detailed plans on assigned engineer tasks.
- .14____ Coordinates equipment augmentation requirements to include MHE.
- .15____ Coordinates any movement of classes IV and V materials.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-102

- .16___ Determines the requirement to prepackage standard loads of class IV materials such as pelletizing pickets, barbed wire, end mines necessary to lay five 100-meter minefields.
- .17___ Identifies any beach improvement/preparation Fork, calculates the time and comport required, ensures personnel and equipment are landed early to accomplish the task, and conducts the necessary staff coordination.
- .18___ Coordinates the location of planned HLZ's required staging areas, fueling areas, taxi areas, tonnage and troops to be landed, anticipated numbers of helicopters, etc.
- .19___ Coordinates the location of vertical takeoff landing (VTOL) sites, time requirements, security, required parking areas, and required markings.
- .20___ Determines the degree of soil preparation required for HLZ's and VTOL sites.
- .21___ Coordinates provisions for the employment of demolition support.
- .22___ Plans for the clearing of vehicle lanes through minefields ensuring standard procedures are used to mark the entrance and exit points.
- .23___ Provides for minesweeping capability.
- .24___ Identifies any requirements for expedient road surfacing, and determines equipment/material requirements.
- .25___ Provides advice in regards to any planned obstacle breach, recommending tactics, techniques was and procedures, and personnel and equipment available.
- .26___ Schedules the rehearsal of procedures contained in the engineer SOP for advanced demolition techniques, actions and responsibilities for deliberate demolitions, and obstacle removal.
- .27___ Develops a countermobility plan and integrates the plan into the overall BSSG defensive plan.
- .28___ Prepares sketches, diagrams, and specifications required for the construction of protective shelters, emplacements, etc.
- .29___ Identifies MEP, bath, and mater requirements.
- .30___ Prepares engineer documents for inclusion in the supported unit's operations plan.
- .31___ Identifies required reports, specific formats, and forms to use.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.11 PLAN BULK FUEL REQUIREMENTS

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed bulk fuel planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Coordinates with operational planners to identify the operational requirements, amount and type of bulk fuel, to include the capacity of the distribution system and the required levels to be maintained ashore.
- .2___ Computes, in coordination with logistical planners, both bulk and packaged fuel requirements to support planned operations as well as contingency plans.
- .3___ Coordinates MEB resupply schedules based upon estimated requirements, availability of products, area transportation.

- .4____ Prepares long range estimates (10/20/30 days of supply) for bulk fuel resupply, and identifies procedures to request the fuel.
- .5____ Coordinates the siting of storage and dispensing points that avoid the congestion along MSR's and take advantage of cover and concealment.
- .6____ Determines the method of distribution; i.e., unit or issue point, and equipment to be used in dispensing fuel.
- .7____ Advises the CSS commander on the personnel, supplies and equipment required to operated the refueling point(s) based on operational requirements, and the time required to prepare and install a dispensing system.
- .8____ Coordinates site preparation requirements with engineer planners.
- .9____ Determines the requirement for the air delivery of fuel, and/or "wet wing" resupply.
- .10____ Identifies transportation requirements, and submits requests for support.
- .11____ Plans for receipt and quality control procedures for bulk and packaged petroleum products based on guidance in the SOP.
- .12____ Plans procedures to be used to recover and dispose of contaminated petroleum products.
- .13____ Plans for the inspection of petroleum products to include on-hand stocks, as well as captured fuel arm that procured from host nation suppliers, to determine quality, and check for contamination using the standards contained in applicable TM's and NAVAIR instructions.
- .14____ Plans provisions for the safe receipt, storage, and issue of petroleum products acquired from the ATF.
- .15____ Plans for the security of storage and dispensing sites.
- .16____ Identifies MHE requirements.
- .17____ Coordinates with ACE personnel to identify personnel, supplies and equipment to be deployed during FARP operations, and procedures to be used in installing the system and in refueling aircraft.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.12 PLAN FOR HEALTH SERVICES

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed health services planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Participates in all stages of operational planning.
- .2____ Establishes a medical services operations center (MSOC) per the medical SOP.
- .3____ Requests medical intelligence on the area of operations to include available resources both in the AOA and in the general region.
- .4____ Provides input to the MAGTF medical and CSS estimate of supportability.
- .5____ Reviews the provisions contained in the medical SOP in relation to the assigned mission and makes changes, where required. (KI)

- .6____ Coordinates with the MEB surgeon for the integration of medical support units throughout the MEB to ensure responsive and adequate treatment of casualties.
- .7____ Coordinates with the MEB surgeon to ensure the medical support plan conforms with the scheme of maneuver and reflects the MEB commander's guidance.
- .8____ Develops the plan for casualty overload at medical units in the field.
- .9____ Coordinates mass casualty treatment and evacuation plans with both the MEB and ATF/MPF staff agencies to include requesting augmentation of mobile medical augmentation readiness teams (MMART) based on the estimated medical workload requirements.
- .10____ Maintains up-to-date information on medical regulating assets and facilities.
- .11____ Coordinates the assignment of dental personnel to augment medical personnel in the event of mass casualties.
- .12____ Ensures casualty evacuation policies are coordinated with GCE and ACE medical elements.
- .13____ Coordinates the scheduling of self-aid and buddy-aid training for troops prior to the landing.
- .14____ (A) Coordinates with the MEB surgeon in the designating of the CRT's ships.
- .15____ Ensures the BSSG medical element is organized, equipped, supplied, and ready to deploy with the supported unit.
- .16____ Reviews procedures for the displacement of BSSG medical units and conducts, at a minimum, a staff rehearsal of movement plans.
- .17____ Ensures immunizations are up-to-date for deployed personnel.
- .18____ Coordinates with MP to arrange support for the custody and accounting of injured POW's and civilians.
- .19____ Coordinates the scheduling of a mass casualty practice during the rehearsal phase.
- .20____ Plans provisions for handling casualties under NBC conditions.
- .21____ Coordinates with the BSSG to ensure NBC decontamination teams are available to provide decontamination services.
- .22____ Coordinates with the MEB surgeon concerning the plan for medical regulating to include out of theater regulating.
- .23____ Plans for the establishment and operation of medical evacuation stations to perform triage functions.
- .24____ Coordinates procedures for the treatment and handling of sick, injured, or wounded civilians as directed by the MEB surgeon.
- .25____ Coordinates the priorities for patient evacuation from shore to ship as directed by the MEB surgeon.
- .26____ Develops a plan for whole blood supply per guidance from CATF/CHPF/MEB/CINC medical staff.
- .27____ Ensures procedures are established for mortuary holding facilities.
- .28____ Plans and coordinates dental support for the MAGTF.
- .29____ Develops a plan for preventive medicine measures for the control of disease(s); i.e., field sanitation, disease surveillance, and occupational analysis.
- .30____ Coordinates casualty reporting procedures with all appropriate staff agencies.
- .31____ Bases priority of treatment for patients only on urgent medical reasons, not patient's status as friendly or enemy.

- .32_____ Determines the type and degree of medical involvement in civil affairs based on guidance from MEB CE.
- .33_____ Prepares the medical appendix to the CSS annex of the operations order.
- .34_____ Coordinates communications support of both medical and dental units.
- .35_____ Provides for a reports control system which stresses only information absolutely required as directed by the ATF/MEB surgeon.
- .36_____ Prepares alternate plans, in coordination with other MEB operational planners, for the redistribution of medical support resources to meet anticipated changes in the tactical situation.
- .37_____ During joint OP's prepares for joint medical support operating.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MEDICAL PLANNING

The health services support unit and medical commander participate, in coordination with MAGTF command element medical planners, in health services planning from initial stages and are a continuing participant throughout the planning phase. In addition to the routine staff concerns discussed in FMFM 3-1, Command and Staff Action, planning includes requesting and using medical intelligence resources and having knowledge of external medical support capabilities; i.e., from the host nation and other services.

MEDICAL SOP'S

Include sections on:

1. Training of combat troops in self aid and buddy aid.
2. Litter team training and plan for acquisition of additional litter teams when required.
3. Medical support facility movement, establishment, operation, disestablishment, and relocation.
4. Plan for medical regulating.
5. Casualty overload and mass casualty procedures.
6. Narcotics, controlled substances, and the security, and accountability of other controlled items.
7. Procedures for resupply.
8. Plan for whole/frozen blood requirements and distribution.
9. Medical communications requirements.
10. Sanitation and preventive medicine.
11. BSSG surgeon quality assurance supervision of care within the BSSG.
12. Procedures for reporting friendly casualties and returns to duty.
13. Procedures for POW casualties (intelligence, security, etc.).
14. Procedures for sick, injured, or wounded civilians.
15. Plan for emergency retrograde of the BSSG medical unit; including all organics personnel, equipment, and casualties.
16. Provisions for NBC warfare.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-106

17. Predeployment medical checklist to ensure unit readiness.

TASK: 7B.4.13 PLAN SECURITY

CONDITION(S): Activities at the AAA are complete and the BSSG has been tasked to support MEB operations. There is a potential rear area security threat from aircraft, helicopterborne/airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The threat forces have a night vision and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EYAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
- .2____ Ensures unit commanders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all operations.
- .3____ Evaluates whether the ROE provide sufficient flexibility for the MEB to defend itself against likely threats, and initiates immediate request for ROE modification when necessary.
- .4____ Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, the use of barriers, and obstacles.
- .5____ Uses field expedient protective measures against enemy lasers; i.e., concealment, observation techniques, smoke, protective cover, limiting the number of Marines observing, use of NVG's thermal night sights.
- .6____ Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, disinformation, etc.
- .7____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and on call.
- .8____ Task organizes elements to ensure adequate antiarmor and passive and active air defense coverage.
- .9____ Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for all forces.
- .10____ Ensures that rear area security plans place minimum reliance on units from maneuver element or GCE.
- .11____ Divides the rear area into several smaller AOR, when appropriate. (Division of rear area includes proper attention to point defense and LOC security requirements.)
- .12____ Ensures that each subordinate unit understands its responsibility for local security.
- .13____ Ensures that the rear area security effort is proportional to the threat.
- .14____ Plans an aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, OP's, LP's, and other local security techniques.
- .15____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
- .16____ Establishes security reaction forces, and procedures for their notification and transportation.
- .17____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .18____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of deployed units; e.g., TRAP, mass casualties, etc.
- .19____ Plans active counterintelligence measures designed to neutralize the hostile multidiscipline intelligence collection effort and efforts toward sabotage, subversion, and terrorism.

- .20____ Develops passive counterintelligence measures designed to conceal and deny information to the enemy, protect personnel from subversion and terrorism, and protect installations and material against sabotage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.14 PLAN BSSG DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been operational for several clays and faces potential threat from aircraft, helicopterborn, airborne assault, armor, unconventional warfare, and terrorist attacks. The BSSG has begun detailed planning. Elements of the BSSG are well established. The civilian population, while largely pro U.S., have been sympathetic to some of the enemy propaganda. The populace is inhabiting the immediate beach/AAA area. The enemy possesses night vision and multidiscipline (HUMINT, IMINT, and SIGINT) intelligence collection capabilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Determines which BSSG elements are displacing, the numbers of troops, equipment and so supplies involved, and the overall area where defense is required.
- .2____ Requests intelligence on the enemy, the area of operations, weather, and information on the civilian populace located in the area of operations.
- .3____ Conducts a map reconnaissance to identify possible locations of CSS units by using maps, aerial photography, or other special topographic products.
- .4____ Arranges for a reconnaissance of the area if the situation permits.
- .5____ Reviews ROE to ensure the security of friendly forces.
- .6____ Identifies the types and numbers of organic weapons available based on the troops and equipment to be displaced ashore, and determines their availability based on their schedule to be displaced ashore.
- .7____ Verifies the planned location of all BSSG units and facilities to be established.
- .8____ Conducts a terrain analysis based on KOCOAs to assist in identifying defensive requirements.
- .9____ Ensures active and passive defensive measures are integrated into the plan for defense.
- .10____ Plans passive defensive measures including dispersal, camouflage, hardening positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
- .11____ Considers the use of deceptive measures such as dummy positions, concealed cargo, disinformation, etc.
- .12____ Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support on call.
- .13____ Plans local security measures which provide for early warning, continual observation, counterreconnaissance screening, to include patrolling, OP's, LP's, and other local security techniques.
- .14____ Coordinates with the GCE to determine their scheme of maneuver, planned MSR and alternate routes, and the planned location of their rear area units to integrate defenses where possible, and identifies additional defensive requirements.
- .15____ Requests antiarmor and air defense augmentation to cover avenues of approach that remain unguarded.
- .16____ Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-108

- .17____ Coordinates the positioning of LAAD assets in depth within those areas occupied by the BSSG.
- .18____ Plans a security reaction force, and procedures to notify and transport them.
- .19____ Coordinates with fire support units and fire support coordination agencies on procedures to use in processing requests for fire from untrained observers.
- .20____ Plans a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
- .21____ Makes maximum use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
- .22____ Plans procedures, based on BSSG SOP, to be used in planning, briefing, preparation, and control over defensive activities.
- .23____ Plans for the personnel and equipment required for a 24-hour operations center to coordinate defensive activities.
- .24____ Plans access procedures and ensures the movement of civilians in and around facilities are restricted and controlled. (See Task: 7B.4.17 PLAN MP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL.)
- .25____ Coordinates NBC policies and procedures for all subordinate logistics units to include warning conditions, detection teams, decontamination teams, and requires MOPP conditions based on MEB guidance.
- .26____ Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of separated units, mass casualties, etc.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.15 PLAN MILITARY POLICE (MP) SUPPORT

CONDITION(S): An MEB has been alerted of a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed MP support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Requests intelligence and combat information on the enemy, perceived threat in the area of operations, and weather.
- .2____ Requests special topographic products which show the road and rail networks, population centers, dams, power plants, and hospitals, etc.
- .3____ Provides MP input into the CSS estimate of supportability.
- .4____ Identifies requirements for battlefield circulation control, security, POW control, and law and order. (See Task: 7B.4.19 PLAN FOR PRISONER OF WAR CONTROL.)
- .5____ Participates in the development of MSR regulations.
- .6____ Uses procedures contained in the unit SOP in the development of MP input for BSSG plans and order.
- .7____ Determines the availability of host nation support to reduce MP requirements.
- .8____ Determines, based on the ROE and the degree of control authorized the BSSG commander, the means and methods to prevent interference with military operations.
- .9____ Determines the MP communication requirements and coordinates directly with the BSSG CEO.
- .10____ Identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.16 PLAN MP SUPPORT FOR BATTLEFIELD CIRCULATION CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and continues detailed planning of MP support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1_____ Participates in the development of the traffic circulation plan, and coordinates the identification of military route numbers, directions of travel, lightlines and black-out signs, classification of routes, and the location of MP traffic control points.
- .2_____ Performs a map reconnaissance to identify restricting terrain, bridges, population centers, and other critical features located along MSR's and alternate routes which could require control measures to ensure smooth and efficient use of the road network.
- .3_____ Participates in the development of convoy procedures to ensure movements of vehicles are coordinated, programmed, and monitored from their points of origin to their final destination; e.g., march routes both primary and alternate, size of convoy, communications frequencies, and MP support requirements, etc.
- .4_____ Recommends the establishment of static HP positions such as control points, roadblocks, and checkpoints at critical locations.
- .5_____ Develops a schedule of MP mobile patrols along MSR's and alternate routes to report on the flow traffic, effects of weather on the route, changes to the route, signs of enemy activity, and enforcement of the control classification and control measures.
- .6_____ Schedules MP patrols to reconnoiter additional routes to verify the type and number of routes that are available, load classification, route widths, obstructions, and restrictions to support future plans.
- .7_____ Identifies aerial support requirements to reconnoiter areas, and report on traffic conditions, etc.
- .8_____ Ensures provisions are made to provide the MP's with a limited night visibility as well as a cross country capability.
- .9_____ Coordinates procedures for handling refugees to prevent them from clogging MSR's and other routes.
- .10_____ Coordinates the distribution of directives/orders relating to battlefield circulation control.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-110

TASK: 7B.4.17 PLAN MP SECURITY OF FACILITIES AND PERSONNEL

CONDITION(S): The BSSG has been alerted to the requirement for the deployment/employment of the MEB, and is continuing detailed MP support planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Identifies those facilities requiring MP security support.
- .2___ Determines the HP manning requirements.
- .3___ Identifies any personnel and equipment augmentation early in the planning.
- .4___ Coordinates access procedures, and ensures the movement of civilians in and around the facilities is restricted and controlled. (KI)
- .5___ Coordinates the establishment of barriers, obstacles, and fortified positions.
- .6___ Plans for the use of wire communications.
- .7___ Coordinates a plan for a reaction force capability.
- .8___ Identifies any requirement to provide personal security to VIP's.
- .9___ Ensures that those Marines assigned to personnel security details are specially trained, well briefed, and equipped with covered communications equipment to coordinate the security missions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESTRICTED ACCESS

Restriction and control of defensive area entry and exit procedures are to be rigidly enforced. A system which allows thorough screening and the protection of U.S. personnel and equipment is planned. This system is three-tiered at a minimum. The first tier consists of signs which indicate who may enter, and posts the rate of speed for vehicles approaching the checkpoint. The second tier, the trigger position, is where searches are conducted as well as identification is checked. The third tier is where weapons capable of destroying incoming vehicles are located; e.g., AT-4, MK-19, SHAW, and .50 Cal machine gun. Special orders for each post are established, and accordingly the last tier has the well defined mission to destroy, immediately, any vehicle passing the checkpoint without proper authorization.

TASK: 7B.4.18 PLAN LAW ENFORCEMENT AND ORDER OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The BSSG has been alerted to a requirement for the deployment/employment of the MEB. Detailed law enforcement planning has begun.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Coordinates directly with local forces, upon MEB approval, to develop procedures to control the civilian population.
- .2___ Develops criminal prevention programs; i.e., sale of illicit drugs, black-market operation, theft and pilferage, etc.
- .3___ Ensures a criminal investigation capability is provided to include the investigation of offenses against U.S. forces or property, and violations of the law of war (war crimes).
- .4___ Advises commanders on potential criminal activities, and recommends control measures and resource requirements to carry them out.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5____ Recommends a command policy on the detention of U.S. military prisoners, and coordinates provisions for the implementation of this policy.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.19 PLAN FOR PRISONER OF WAR CONTROL

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed POW planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Estimates the anticipated POW capture and civilian internee (CI) rate in coordination with the operational planners.
- .2____ Integrates the plan for collecting POW's with the GCE's ground scheme of maneuver.
- .3____ Identifies interpreter requirements.
- .4____ Based on the anticipated POW/CI numbers, coordinates the development of food, water, class IV, and transportation requirements.
- .5____ Ensures the definition of CI's are established, easily understood, and promulgated.
- .6____ Identifies personnel and equipment augmentation requirements.
- .7____ Plans crowd control procedures to include the provision for public address equipment and riot control agents.
- .8____ Prepares and schedules instruction to Marines on the provisions of international agreements and regulations relating to detainees.
- .9____ Establishes the procedures to segregate POW's/CI's by sex and type; i.e., officers, NCO's, nonrated, and civilian combatants, etc., and ensures accountability.
- .10____ Ensures provisions are made to return personal items, protective clothes, and protective equipment to the detainees.
- .11____ Coordinates transportation support to provide for the speedy movement of detainees to minimize the time prior to processing.
- .12____ Ensures procedures are specified to safeguard POW's/ CI's from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
- .13____ Coordinates with ITT personnel to ensure provisions are made to allow for the opportunity to interrogate detainees.
- .14____ Coordinates medical care and evacuation procedures established to ensure enemy the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
- .15____ Coordinates the location and establishment of temporary detainees internment facilities/holding areas.
- .16____ Ensures provisions for the application of force in quelling riots and other disturbances are per the Geneva Convention.
- .17____ Ensures procedures for the establishment of a screening board to determine the status of persons who commit belligerent acts, and procedures for handling persons determined not to be POW's.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-112

- .18____ Minimizes field processing requirements for POW by using personnel record forms, and establishes procedures for their use.
- .19____ Coordinates procedures to be used in turning over detainees to designated units as soon as possible after initial classification and administrative processing.
- .20____ Coordinates with counterintelligence personnel to ensure provisions are made to allow for the opportunity to interrogate prisoners of counterintelligence interest. POW(s) of counterintelligence interest include; intelligence personnel, suspected enemy agents, officers, deserters, members of reconnaissance units, and unconventional warfare personnel.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

SEARCHING

POW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons, equipment, and documents immediately upon capture unless the number of POW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment. POW's should be tagged for identification and later matching with any documents/equipment found, and should be instructed not to talk to other POW's to prevent collaboration of stories.

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first-aid kits, etc.), clothing, and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A captured document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. When such documents are taken from a POW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual POW from whom it was taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the POW's/detainee from whom it was taken, once it has been determined by intelligence personnel that it is of no intelligence value. In no instance should the personal identity card of a POW be taken.

PERSONAL EFFECTS

Except as indicated below, POW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money, valuables, protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; and badges of grade and nationality. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from POW's as a security measure, they must be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of POW's first requires that individual POW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat condition may not permit the detailed interrogation of POW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate POW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex. Evacuate POW's to collection points underguard as soon as possible. Rapid initial processing will contribute to the timeliness of interrogation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MEDICAL CARE

POW's are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any difference in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

TASK: 7B.4.20 PLAN CIVIL AFFAIRS

CONDITION(S): The MEB has been alerted to a political situation that requires its deployment/employment. The MEB commander has placed Civil Affairs under the staff cognizance of the command element G-3, and has further designated the BSSG to provide assistance in the implantation of CA activities. The BSSG has been alerted, and has begun detailed civil affairs planning in cooperation with the command element.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Requests from the MEB G-2/3 all available information on the area to include information on cultural differences, customs, traditions, national and religious observances, sacred or forbidden places, copies of local laws, and international agreements signed by the countries in the area of interest.
- .2____ Requests information concerning the attitude of the populace toward U.S. forces from the MEB G-2/3.
- .3____ Receives intelligence and information on the current situation with emphasis on the effect of combat on the population in the area.
- .4____ Reviews treaties or other agreements which address the relationship between military forces and the local government and civilians.
- .5____ Receives input to the BSSG estimate of supportability concentrating on the estimated extent of civilian interference (e.g., refugees, demonstrators, and bystanders), the control/security measures necessary to minimize interference and protect civilians, and the provision for any emergency food, clothing, housing, and medical requirements from the CE.
- .6____ Provides input in the development of CA policy to the MEB G-3.
- .7____ Recommends civil affairs activities to be integrated with the planned scheme of maneuver.
- .8____ Provides representation for the conduct of liaison with host government military and civilian authorities early in the planning, if the situation allows.
- .9____ Assists in commercial activities to include the contracting of civilian labor and equipment such as vehicles, construction equipment and supplies, and material handling equipment.
- .10____ Provides input to the refugee and displaced persons program to include BSSG manpower, equipment, and supplies required.
- .11____ Conducts and maintains liaison with all other organizations involved in civil affairs activities to include agencies of the U.S., indigenous, and third countries when directed by the command element.
- .12____ Assists in the identification of buildings, areas, etc., that require special security; e.g., local government records offices.
- .13____ Coordinates with the MEB surgeon for the procedures to be used in the medical treatment and evacuation of injured, sick, or wounded civilians.
- .14____ Assists in implementing procedures for the handling of claims against the United States.
- .15____ Provides CA reports as directed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-114

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.21 CONDUCT NBC DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The MEB is concocting tactical operations. The enemy is known to possess nuclear and chemical warfare capabilities and have demonstrated their intention to employ NBC attacks in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ BSSG possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC attacks and reports required.
- .2____ Establishes back-up command, control and communications procedures to be used under NBC conditions.
- .3____ Receives NBC reports from subordinate elements or higher command elements when NBC attack is considered probable, or during an attack.
- .4____ Alerts all subordinate elements and provides guidance.
- .5____ Provides direction to subordinates concerning MOPP, detection, monitor/survey operations, contamination avoidance, and decontamination procedures.
- .6____ Continues to receive reports from subordinate elements.
- .7____ Provides updates to subordinates as they become available.
- .8____ Provides assistance throughout the MEB in hasty or deliberate decontamination, when directed.
- .9____ Advises the commander/S-3 on the effects of an NBC environment or the unit's ability to carry out particular aspects of its mission.
- .10____ Plots estimated chemical hazard utilizing NBC reports.
- .11____ Provides first aid treatment of casualties in an NBC environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.22 REHEARSE COMMUNICATIONS

CONDITION(S): The BSSG has completed their initial planning. The MEB has scheduled an integrated rehearsal prior to arriving in/departing from the objective area/AAA.

STANDARDS: EVAL: y: N: NE

- .1____ Briefs overall communications plan, schedule of events, and COMSEC procedures to all staff members and unit/element leaders.
- .2____ Erasures the rehearsal plan tests the supportability of the communications plan.
- .3____ Installs communications based on established priorities.
- .4____ Tests the adequacy of planned aerial retransmission, if required.

- .5___ Ensures the compatibility of COMSEC means.
- .6___ (A) Establishes communications with the TACLOG.
- .7___ Establishes and checks each circuit and frequency allocated.
- .8___ Verifies each circuit for quality and reliability.
- .9___ Identifies interference problems and reports them immediately.
- .10___ Verifies COMSEC procedures.
- .11___ Evaluates radio operator proficiency.
- .12___ Follows correct message handling procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.23 OPERATE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER

CONDITION(S): The MEB is conducting tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, the GCE, and the ACE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Provides and monitors CSS operations on a 24-hour basis.
- .2___ Demonstrates the ability to handle routine and emergency CSS functions in a responsive manner.
- .3___ Staffs the operations center to ensure each commodity section is represented.
- .4___ Validates, on a daily basis, preplanned support requests with both commodity and supported unit representatives.
- .5___ Maintains current asset status information, and maintains information on parts requirements.
- .6___ Controls the movement of CSS personnel and assets outside the BSA, and maintains information concerning their movement.
- .7___ Coordinates requests for contact teams, and monitors the requests to ensure support is provided.
- .8___ Coordinates BSA defensive operations, beachfront security, and internal security operations.
- .9___ Receives daily forecasts for fuel from subordinates, and maintains an accurate stock level.
- .10___ Receives daily forecasts of requirements, and schedules the production and delivery of water.
- .11___ Submits detailed ASR's or other requests for air support in a timely manner.
- .12___ Schedules and coordinates the movement of supplies, personnel, and equipment.
- .13___ Develops contingency plans to provide required CSS support to include mass casualties and the rapid movement of personnel, supplies, and/or equipment.
- .14___ Reviews, revises, and updates CSS plans to facilitate planned future operations.
- .15___ Maintains a chronological report of all significant events that occur.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-116

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.24 CONDUCT COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG, is providing CSS support to the GCE, the CE, and the ACE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Schedules work effort based on the commander's priority system.
- .2___ Utilizes all sources of supply to include host nation, interservice, open purchase, etc., effectively to provide timely, responsive, and required support.
- .3___ Takes advantage of available host country labor support; e.g., service corps.
- .4___ Ensures landing support operations are efficiently organized, scheduled, and coordinated.
- .5___ Deployed automated data processing support functions demonstrate the ability to pass, transmit, and receive requests as well as get status of requests.
- .6___ Maintains communications with those organizations and agencies providing support to coordinate the priority shipment of parts, supplies, and equipment, etc.
- .7___ Places emphasis on preventive maintenance measures.
- .8___ Specifies measures to be taken to overcome environmental conditions; e.g., corrosion control, engine warm-up time, exercising of equipment, winterization, etc.
- .9___ Brigade Service Support Area (BSSA) layout allows controlled access, provides for an efficient circulation plan, and ensures the safety, health, and security of CSS personnel.
- .10___ Controls the allocation of NVG's to allow equipment operators and drivers to operate on a 24-hour basis.
- .11___ Schedules triage drills on a routine basis.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.25 EMPLOY SINGLE AND MULTICNANNEL RADIO EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, the GCE, and the ACE.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1___ Demonstrates effective frequency and antenna separation.
- .2___ Selects and correctly employs the proper antenna to include any field expedients required.
- .3___ Follows safety techniques.
- .4___ Follows proper grounding procedures.

- .5____ Demonstrates appropriate trouble-shooting procedures, and implements alternate means of communication if primary means can not be restored.
- .6____ Employs circuit profile techniques.
- .7____ Employs radio aerial or ground retransmission sites.
- .8____ Demonstrates effective equipment power management to ensure reliable communications.
- .9____ Follows operator procedures.
- .10____ Employs COMSEC equipment properly, and operators use correct COMSEC procedures.
- .11____ Employs techniques to alleviate environmental and weather conditions affecting equipment employment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.26 EMPLOY ECCM

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, the GCE, and the ACE. The enemy has used EW capabilities in the theater of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Uses terrain masking techniques where practical.
- .2____ Uses only authorized brevity codes/prowords.
- .3____ Uses authentication/numerical encryption.
- .4____ Radio operators continue to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness, and send messages by alternate means, if available.
- .5____ Radios are remoted to the maximum extent practical to protect the location of the operators.
- .6____ Wire circuits are installed where feasible.
- .7____ Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
- .8____ Adheres to EMCON conditions.
- .9____ Employs directional antennas to reduce electromagnetic signature when feasible.
- .10____ Transmitting antennas are sited on the reverse slope of the hill (away from the enemy) when practicable.
- .11____ "Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
- .12____ Reports MIJI per the formats and procedures designated in the operations order.
- .13____ Uses lowest power necessary on radios to provide communications.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

VII-B-118

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.27 PROVIDE COMMUNICATIONS PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, the GCE, and the ACE. Communications centers and switching stations have been established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Compiles and utilizes communication access lists.
- .2____ Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
- .3____ Adheres to current CMS material directives.
- .4____ Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces are in place.
- .5____ Possesses an EAP appropriate to the threat intelligence.
- .6____ Personnel are knowledgeable of EAP destruction procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.28 CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, the GCE, and the ACE. Communications control facilities have been established to ensure conductivity.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Establishes communication control procedures.
- .2____ Follows installation and restoration priorities.
- .3____ Maintains circuit status.
- .4____ Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
- .5____ Receives and prepares communications status reports, as required.
- .6____ Maintains effective systems control and technical control procedures based on command element priorities.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.29 EMPLOY TELEPHONE SWITCHING

CONDITION(S): Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, and the ACE. The tactical situation allows telephone networks to be established.

STANDARDS: EVAL: ;Y N; NE

- .1____ Develops a telephone plan which identifies subscribers, priority of restoration, category of services, etc.
- .2____ Telephone plan meets the operational requirements.
- .3____ Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for a pack-up system.
- .4____ Utilizes existing commercial/DCS facilities, if available.
- .5____ Installs telephone system according to established priorities.
- .6____ Updates telephone system as changes occur.
- .7____ Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
- .8____ Organizes effective system control and technical control.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

TASK: 7B.4.30 EMPLOY TERMINAL EQUIPMENT (TELETYPE, FAX, ETC.)

CONDITION(S) Elements of the MEB are engaged in tactical operations. The BSSG is providing CSS support to the CE, GCE, and the ACE. Terminal equipment is being used to pass essential information.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1____ Connectivity between all planned terminal equipment exists.
- .2____ Correctly configures terminal and COMSEC equipment.
- .3____ Follows correct operator procedures.
- .4____ Follows proper grounding techniques.
- .5____ Meets environmental considerations.
- .6____ Establishes restoration procedures.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTION: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.
